



Household Budget Surveys in the EU

Methodology and recommendations
for harmonisation – 2003



EUROPEAN
COMMISSION



Europe Direct is a service to help you find answers to your questions about the European Union

**New freephone number:
00 800 6 7 8 9 10 11**

A great deal of additional information on the European Union is available on the Internet.
It can be accessed through the Europa server (<http://europa.eu.int>).

Luxembourg: Office for Official Publications of the European Communities, 2003

ISBN 92-894-5435-0

ISSN 1725-0056

© European Communities, 2003

FOREWORD

The promotion of economical and social progress in Europe, as set out in the Treaty of the European Union, calls for more in-depth knowledge and greater comparability of data on social and economic conditions in the EU. Household Budget Surveys (HBS) are among the most comprehensive household surveys, conducted in all Member States of the Union. Through the years, their scope and content have expanded greatly, giving them a particularly important role in the statistics on households.

Despite the common focus of the surveys on the study of patterns of consumption of private households in different population groups, the national household budget surveys represent a diversity of structures and designs, as well as differences in the topics covered. In order to know more about this diversity and reduce it, Eurostat produced in 1993 and 1997 two methodological manuals¹ on HBS giving some specific recommendations on many technical issues. These exercises have allowed improving dramatically the comparability of HBS data, and consequently their usefulness for European purposes. However it appeared that a new update was necessary in order to incorporate some new recommendations. The main changes compared with the previous publications are as follows:

- Using the previous achievements on harmonisation as a starting point, further steps in the way of defining common approaches are proposed.
- A new common set of variables is published in a specific chapter, which takes into account the actual needs of the users of the HBS data at European level. Compared with previous versions, this set introduces some improvements and simplifications.
- The common harmonised nomenclature regarding consumption expenditure: the COICOP-HBS (Classification Of Individual Consumption by Purpose adapted to the needs of HBS) nomenclature has been revised and improved. As for the previous version, these changes also keep the compatibility with similar classifications used in national accounts and consumer price indices.

Moreover, the present methodology strives to capture and describe the diversity between Member States from a comparative perspective, taking national surveys conducted around the reference year of 1999 as a basis. It represents one of the continuing efforts of Eurostat to harmonise the surveys and make their results more widely accessible.

Eurostat is committed to assisting Member States, Accessing Countries, as well as other interested countries, in the improvement of their survey methods and procedures through the provision of guidelines and direct technical support. To this end, the present study includes a comprehensive methodological review and a range of technical recommendations.

This study has been carried out by Eurostat with the help of the national delegates participating in the Eurostat Working Group on Household Budget Surveys, the contributions of which have been essential for the achievement of this methodology. The publication has been written by Antonio Puente, Karin Winqvist, Nicolas Woerner and Harry Bearings, with the collaboration of several colleagues of different Eurostat's units, who have read over the manuscript and have proposed numerous improvements.

Gabrielle Clotuche
Director of Social Statistics
Eurostat, October 2003

¹ 'Family Budget Surveys in the EC: Methodology and Recommendations for Harmonisation - Luxembourg 1993' and 'Household Budget Surveys in the EC: Methodology and Recommendations for Harmonisation - Luxembourg 1997'.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 HOUSEHOLD EXPENDITURES IN THE EU 1999: SUMMTAARY OF MAIN FINDINGS.	5
1.1 OVERVIEW	5
1.2 STRUCTURE OF EXPENDITURES	6
CHAPTER 2.SCOPE.....	7
CHAPTER 3 OBJECTIVES, USES AND USERS.....	9
3.1 NATIONAL PERSPECTIVE.....	9
3.2 EU PERSPECTIVE	10
CHAPTER 4 CONCEPTS, DEFINITIONS AND CLASSIFICATIONS.....	15
4.1 MAIN CONCEPTS AND DEFINITIONS	15
4.1.1 <i>DEFINITION OF THE HOUSEHOLD</i>	15
4.1.2 <i>MEMBERS OF A HOUSEHOLD</i>	17
4.1.3 <i>HEAD OF HOUSEHOLD AND REFERENCE PERSON</i>	20
4.1.4 <i>CHILD-ADULT DEFINITION</i>	22
4.2 THE ESA 95 CONCEPT OF FINAL HOUSEHOLD CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE	22
4.3 THE CONCEPT OF NET INCOME	26
4.3.1 <i>THE TREATMENT OF TAXES AND COMPULSORY SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS</i>	27
4.3.2 <i>NON-MONETARY COMPONENTS OF INCOME</i>	28
4.3.3 <i>PROPERTY INCOME AND RENTALS</i>	28
4.3.4 <i>OTHER TRANSFERS</i>	28
4.3.5 <i>INDIVIDUAL INCOME AND HOUSEHOLD INCOME</i>	29
4.4 BORDERLINE CASES	29
4.4.1 <i>GOODS OR SERVICES RETAINED FOR OWN FINAL CONSUMPTION</i>	30
4.4.2 <i>LEASING AND HIRE PURCHASES</i>	38
4.4.3 <i>TRANSACTIONS IN EXISTING GOODS</i>	39
4.4.4 <i>HEALTH AND EDUCATION CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURES</i>	40
4.4.5 <i>OTHER ITEMS</i>	44
CHAPTER 5 MAIN UNITS AND VARIABLES: THE HARMONISATION PROGRAMME.....	47
5.1 CONTEXT	47
5.2 COICOP-HBS 1999.....	47
5.3 MAIN VARIABLES.....	48
5.3.1 <i>MAIN BASIC VARIABLES</i>	48
5.3.2 <i>MAIN DERIVED VARIABLES</i>	52
CHAPTER 6 SAMPLE DESIGN	55
6.1. COVERAGE.....	55
6.2. SAMPLE SIZE	55
6.3. SAMPLING	56
6.4. SAMPLE ALLOCATION.....	57
6.4.1. <i>MULTI-STAGE SAMPLING</i>	57
6.4.2. <i>ULTIMATE SAMPLING UNIT</i>	58
6.5. SAMPLING FRAME	59
6.5.1. <i>BASING THE HBS SAMPLE ON ANOTHER, LARGER SAMPLE</i>	59
6.5.2. <i>MASTER SAMPLES</i>	60
6.5.3. <i>TWO-PHASE SAMPLING</i>	61
6.6. STRATIFICATION.....	61
6.7. RESPONSE RATE.....	62
6.8. SUBSTITUTION.....	62
CHAPTER 7 SURVEY STRUCTURE AND CONTENT	64
7.1. RECORDING PERIOD	64
7.2. SURVEY INSTRUMENTS	68

7.3. SURVEY INTERVIEWS	70
7.4. QUESTIONNAIRES	70
7.5. DIARIES.....	71
7.6. REFERENCE PERIODS.....	75
7.6.1. <i>FIXED VERSUS MOVING REFERENCE PERIODS</i>	75
7.6.2. <i>THE LAST PAYMENT APPROACH</i>	76
7.6.3. <i>REFERENCE PERIOD FOR AGGREGATED DATA</i>	76
CHAPTER 8 CHECKING AND WEIGHTING OF DATA.....	79
8.1. CHECKING DATA FROM THE HOUSEHOLD BUDGET SURVEY.....	79
8.1.1. <i>CHECK PROGRAM CARRIED OUT BY THE COUNTRIES</i>	79
8.1.2. <i>CHECK PROGRAM CARRIED OUT BY EUROSTAT</i>	81
8.2. TREATMENT OF MISSING DATA.....	82
8.3. WEIGHTING OF DATA.....	82
CHAPTER 9 TABULATION PLAN.....	84
9.1. THE LEVELS OF CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE	84
9.2. THE STRUCTURE OF CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE	85
9.3. HOUSEHOLD CHARACTERISTICS	85
9.4. SUMMARY: LIST OF TABLES.....	86
ANNEX 1: SURVEY PROFILES OF MEMBER STATES AND EFTA COUNTRIES	88
ANNEX 2: EUROPEAN CODES FOR ALL THE VARIABLES AND UNITS	141
ANNEX 3: COICOP-HBS 1999 WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES	166
ANNEX 4: SURVEY PROFILES OF EFTA COUNTRIES	209
ANNEX 5: REFERENCES	216

CHAPTER 1 HOUSEHOLD EXPENDITURES IN THE EU 1999: SUMMARY OF MAIN FINDINGS

1.1 OVERVIEW

The results of the 1999 Household Budget Survey show that most European households in the EU Member States spent an average between 20 000 and 30 000 PPS on goods and services in 1999 (see Table 1).

The percentage change of average household expenditures since the previous survey, which was conducted in 1994, can vary substantially from one country to another. In United Kingdom and Greece average household expenditures rose more than 30% over the 5-year period, whereas in Spain an increase of only 2% could be observed. Part of the change can be attributed to inflation: the price of goods and services measured by the harmonised index of consumer prices (HICP) rose by 5.5% in Finland and by more than 20% in Greece. The average household size decreased or stabilised from 1994 to 1999 (see Table 2).

Table 1: Average consumption expenditure per household in PPS, 1994, 1999¹⁾

	1999	1994
B	27.4	22.7
DK	23.4	19.2
D	23.5	20.7
EL	23.4	17.7
E	20.0	19.6
F	24,6	22.3
IRL	24,6	22.2
I	27.2	22.8
L	45.2	38.6
NL	25.7	20.3
A	26.5	24.3
P	18,2	16.3
FIN	18.2	16.0
S	21.7	18.0
UK	27.6	20.5

Table 2: Average household size, 1994, 1999²⁾

	1999	1994
B	2.5	2.5
DK	2.1	2.1
D	2.2	2.3
EL	2.8	2.9
E	3.2	3.3
F	2.4	2.5
IRL	3.1	3.3
I	2.6	2.8
L	2.7	2.6
NL	2.3	2.3
A	2.5	2.7
P	2.8	3.0
FIN	2.2	2.2
S	2.2	2.2
UK	2.3	2.4

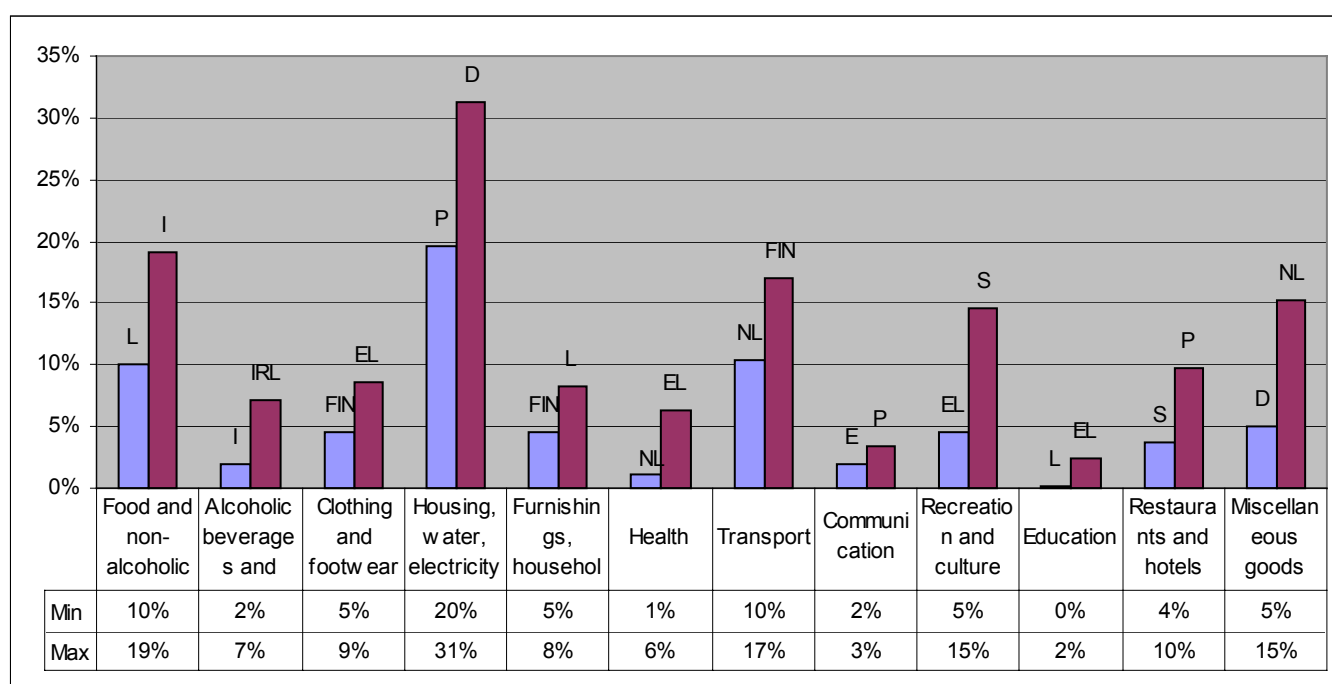
1) In 1000 PPS. Source: Household Budget Surveys 1994 and 1999 (Eurostat). A PPS converts every national monetary unit into a common reference unit, the 'Purchasing Power Standard', of which every unit can buy the same amount of products across the countries in a specific year.

2) Source: HBS

1.2 STRUCTURE OF EXPENDITURES

In 1999, the largest broad categories of household consumption expenditure were on ‘housing’, ‘transport’ and ‘food and non-alcoholic beverages’ for most of the 15 Member States, and in that order. ‘Housing’ was first on the list for all the 14 EU countries. In almost all countries ‘transport’ and ‘food’ ‘were in either second and third place. In Belgium, Spain, Greece, Italy and Sweden food was in second place. In Germany and the United Kingdom ‘recreation’ came third. In Graph 1, the spending pattern by goods/services categories is presented. Per product category, the Member State with the highest and the lowest expenditure is shown.

Graph 1: Distribution of household expenditures by goods and services categories (%), 1999¹⁾



1) Source: Household Budget Surveys, 1999. Household consumption expenditure per COICOP division in terms of total expenditures are included for the Member States with the highest and lowest percentage among 14 EU Member States: Belgium, Denmark, Germany, Greece, Spain, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Austria, Portugal, Finland, Sweden and the United Kingdom.

CHAPTER 2 SCOPE

The Household Budget Surveys (HBS) in the European Union are sample surveys of private households carried out regularly under the responsibility of the National Statistical Offices (NSIs) in each of the fifteen Member States (European Statistical System). Essentially, they provide information about household consumption expenditures on goods and services, with considerable detail in the categories used; information on income, possession of consumer durable goods and cars; basic information on housing and many demographic and socio-economic characteristics. Unlike other European statistical domains, the HBS is voluntary and no EU regulation exists. There is thus considerable freedom for each Member State to decide the objectives, methodology, programming and resource assignment for their respective HBS.

In co-operation with the National Statistical Offices of the Member States, Eurostat has for many years worked on the quality - mainly the comparability of HBS statistics within the EU.² In spite of the important progress already done, there is still big room for improvement regarding quality and harmonisation of HBS data.

Eurostat's mission is to provide the European Union with a high-quality statistical information service. Quality of statistics in this sense encompasses not only the statistical quality concepts of variance and bias (*reliability*) or *comparability* between countries, but also *relevance* in the sense of measuring the right things and of being available in time to be useful (*timeliness*). Quality also refers to the extent to which output of a survey can be integrated and used in conjunction with data on related topics and to achieve harmony of data within integrative frameworks, such as for instance the European System of Accounts 1995 (hereafter referred to as ESA 95). Finally, *accessibility* should be mentioned; it takes into account the suitability of the form in which the information is available, the media of dissemination, the availability of meta-data and whether the user has reasonable opportunity to know the information is available and how to access it. The principal aim of this publication is to establish the initiative for progress on the coherence of the HBS and overlapping statistical frameworks. This means that for the consumption expenditure concepts and definitions, the reference for the HBS will be the latest version of ESA (ESA 95)³. For the main HBS background variables (household type, employment status, income etc.), the considerations from the Eurostat project on Harmonisation of Social Statistics form the baseline. The contributions of the NSI representatives in the HBS Work Group have also been a major source of information for this document. The mutual advantages of complete integration are evident. To achieve more coherence, recommendations will be made. As far as the other quality elements are concerned, Eurostat will express opinions for improvement from the European perspective. In all this, Eurostat respects each country's choice of their optimal mix of quality elements, which has been made given the specific constraints on resources, etc. At the same time, Eurostat wishes to stress that periodicity and timeliness are the second and the third crucial quality elements to elaborate on. Not all countries have annual continuous surveys, so periodicity is likely to deteriorate with consumption patterns changing rapidly and continuously in the dynamic society we live in today. As a consequence, the potential use may be diminished. The approach of this document consists in a detailed description of the methodology used in the latest HBS carried out by the Member States and compiled by Eurostat,

² Eurostat collected micro data sets from the Member State countries for the reference years 1988 and 1994, recodified them into the common tabulation program and included the aggregate results in the official Eurostat publications. See 'Household Budget Surveys in the EU: Methodology and recommendations for harmonisation, 1997, for a historical overview (Section 1.5).

³ The ESA 95 replaced the European System of Integrated Economic Accounts published in 1979 (ESA 79). ESA 95 came into force on 20 December 1996.

accompanied by a set of recommendations for further harmonisation. The sometimes divergent objectives and constraints in the Member States prevent harmonising as far as Eurostat would like. In spite of this limitation, the aim of this document is to consolidate the efforts already made by all the participants in the HBS Work Group and to set up a sound reference for the next steps forward in the harmonisation process.

Probably the first and most important point of divergence is the basic concept of household consumption expenditure to be used. Although there is a basic agreement on using “household final consumption expenditure”, as defined in Chapter 4, as the basic concept to be measured, some countries have more ambitious targets and are able to measure the broader concept of “household actual final consumption”. These two concepts focus on the economic value of household consumption; however some users are also interested in the physical aspects of consumption. For these reasons, the recommendations given in this manual as well as the proposed variable list try to cover a wide variety of uses of these surveys. The drawback of this approach is the risk of overloading the questionnaires. Finally a trade-off must be achieved between satisfying any possible purpose of HBS and keeping questionnaires reasonably simple.

The latest Household Budget surveys in the Member States, which took place between 1998 and 2000 (depending on the country), constitute the basis for the quality description along the lines mentioned. Eurostat centred the survey years on the common reference year 1999. The description of the quality issue is structured by using the common survey steps, in the usual order of occurrence (Chapters 3 to 8). More specifically, Chapter 3 describes objectives, uses and users. The main concepts and definitions used by the Member States in relation to the ones used in the overlapping statistical frameworks are subject of Chapter 4. Chapter 5 presents the harmonised variable code-list including the main background variables. For publication purposes, it is of crucial importance that the micro-data of the countries allow the construction of these variables. Chapter 6 concentrates on sampling-related issues (coverage, sampling, stratification, non-response, etc.), whilst Chapter 7 is about the survey instruments (data collection operations, questionnaires). Chapter 8 deals with the treatment and processing of the survey data (checking, weighting, editing and imputation). Finally, the harmonised set of tables published in the rounds after the 1999 survey is described in Chapter 9.

Four annexes complete the methodology. Annex 1 describes the survey profiles of the Member States. Annex 2 contains a list with all the variables and units and their codes. The new classification of goods and services items (COICOP-HBS⁴ 1999) is presented in Annex 3 together with explanatory notes. Annex 4 describes the survey profiles of two EFTA countries. Finally, Annex 5 present some basic references used to develop this methodology.

⁴ *Classification Of Individual Consumption by Purpose (1999).*

CHAPTER 3 OBJECTIVES, USES AND USERS

3.1 NATIONAL PERSPECTIVE

Historically, the prime objective of conducting HBS in all the Member States was to collect information on household consumption expenditures for use in updating the 'weights' for the basket of goods used in the Consumer Price Indices (CPI). The 'weights' measure expenditures on specific goods and services items as a proportion of total expenditures. Over the years, the range of uses has grown, as the surveys also had to meet the requirement to give a picture of living conditions of private households in certain areas and periods of time. To this end, the surveys provide detailed descriptions of a private household's total consumption and expenditures by household characteristics such as income, possession of consumer durable goods, housing and many demographic and socio-economic characteristics. The surveys also provide information on levels of living in terms of income and expenditure. Hence HBS are multi-purpose surveys which cater for a large number of uses and users. In terms of the scope and detail of information supplied, the surveys are an invaluable source on economic and social living conditions of households and individuals in the EU Member States.

The HBS are not only used by the NSIs to produce the weights in the CPI, but also for determining the weights in the harmonised index of consumer prices (HICP) at the EU level. On 7 March 1997 the European Commission (Eurostat) published the first set of HICP, which since then have appeared regularly each month with a time-lag of one month. The NSIs are obliged by the EU Council Regulations to submit the weights (together with the HICP sub-indices) using the four digits categories and sub-categories, derived from the COICOP international classification, known as COICOP/HICP.⁴ Although, it is not required for the weightings in the HICP that HBS are carried out more frequently than once every five years, Member States are obliged to up-date the weightings with a frequency sufficient to meet the comparability requirement. Accordingly, Member States experiencing changes in consumption patterns should increase the frequency of the survey (Commission Regulation (EC), No 2454/97).

The HBS is also a source for household consumption expenditures for the purpose of measuring consumption expenditures in the National Accounts in many countries (see Table 6). Therefore data must comply the ESA 95 definitions and classifications, implying for instance that the COICOP 1999 must be used.

Finally, the survey information is used widely in the MS as the basis for studies of living conditions of private households. These might be studies focusing on certain subjects for example patterns of consumption expenditures or income, or relations between different subjects such as the influence of the level of income on consumption patterns, or patterns of consumption expenditure in relation to different types of households. Other applications are the:

- assessment of the impact on household living conditions of existing or proposed economic or social measures, particularly changes in the structure of household expenditures and in household consumption;

⁴ From January 2000, the COICOP/HICP is based on the COICOP 1999 (Commission Regulation (EC), No 1749/1999). The COICOP/HBS has the same basis and has been applied for the 1999 data. The most recent ESA 95 data are also according to the COICOP 1999 (period 1995-2000).

- estimation of the redistributive effects of direct and indirect taxation, and of a wide range of social benefits, on the situations of the various types of households;
- analysis of the variations in levels of living over a period of years and the disparities among households in the different socio-economic groups, geographical areas, rural and urban zones, etc.;

Data derived from the HBS (in connection with income surveys) may also be used in connection with the determination of minimum wage levels, assessment of the need for revision of minimum wages and other questions relating to wage determination.

Specific sub-populations might be studied such as the elderly, the young, manual workers or private sector employees. A number of countries specifically use the survey information to study the distribution of income/consumption with the purpose of looking at poverty issues. Moreover, there is a wide range of customers for the data outside the statistical offices. The different groups of users are:

- Ministries and public administrations, which use the data for economic and social policy planning purposes;
- Universities and research organisations, which use the data for research on living conditions of private households;
- Private firms and consultants. Their use is often directed towards analyses of consumption patterns of households in relation to the marketing of private consumer products;
- The general public that often gets the information via mass media in general or publications published by the statistical offices.

The NSIs also produce statistical paper publications presenting the results of the surveys (see annex 1 on Survey Profiles for details on each country). Most countries have a system of producing short, focused reports emphasising particular aspects of households' living conditions; these are often published within a relatively short time of finishing the survey. Most offices also disseminate data via electronic means, for example on diskettes or CD-ROMs - and, in some countries, via the Internet.

3.2 EU PERSPECTIVE

EU objectives overlap national objectives to a large extent, but the focus is different. The three main users at the national level also appear at the European level. From the EU perspective, the goal is to contribute to the higher quality of HBS⁵ consumption expenditure required for the ESA, for the weights in the HICP and for studies on living conditions for all the – by now – 15 EU countries. This would indirectly serve the most important European users, i.e. the ECB and the European Commission.

Other users of Household Budget Surveys data at European level have been the Commission's Directorates-Generals of Economic and Financial Affairs, Employment and Social Affairs, Health and Consumer Protection, Research and Regional Policy. The Commission uses the data mainly for policy purposes in connection with social and economic planning, and to help identify needs or establish targets. Social policy purposes include transport and environmental issues; economic purposes relate to the analysis of poverty and social exclusion and also to consumer (protection)

⁵ In this methodology the term 'Household Budget Survey' is used as a general name covering all the EU15 surveys. It is abbreviated HBS.

policies. Eurostat also produces printed statistical publications presenting the results of the survey. An example is the 'Statistics in Focus' series of short, focused reports emphasising particular aspects of household living conditions (e.g. on expenditure patterns of elderly people). A main dissemination line of the HBS results is the Eurostat's network of data shops. The results are also available on CD-ROM.

Eurostat takes the position that quality improvements should focus on the comparability of certain items as well as reducing periodicity and improving timeliness. To have frequent and timely data, available maybe even on an annual basis, is likely to activate a large latent demand for HBS household expenditure data, in a world where consumption patterns could change drastically in short time. Moreover, the link to ESA and HICP will make more extensive and integrative statistical descriptions possible.

Data on certain expenditure items are by their very nature not comparable between countries due to highly different social protection systems. The worst situation is for health and education expenditures, which results from wide inter-country variations in health care and educational systems. In some of the Nordic countries household health expenditures cannot even be identified, because they are financed mainly through the tax system. Consequently, the use of HBS data in these fields is limited. For the purpose of analysing living conditions between countries, it is nevertheless necessary to produce estimates of health and education expenditures, which are comparable between countries as a complement to the HBS. Otherwise, one might wrongly conclude that households in a country where, for instance, health expenditures are mainly paid through the tax system, implying an almost zero in the HBS, have a lower standard of living. An accurate estimate cannot of course be made at household level, but at best at the aggregate level of publication. The estimation technique discussed in chapter 4.2.4 uses the ESA totals and the HBS of countries with comparable systems for distribution purposes. Health and educational expenditures score the lowest on the comparability scale. However, there are other goods and services items that are not easily comparable between the HBS of the Member States, such as housing.

By focussing on getting timely data from the HBS on expenditure categories which already have a high comparability, Eurostat hopes to increase the speed of delivery from the Member States. The selection of the items is discussed in the next chapter. Final and detailed data will be published the moment Eurostat has processed the household data of each of the Member States. The national survey period does not coincide exactly with the Eurostat reference year 1999 for each country. Table 1 shows which national surveys were included for the reference year 1999. As long as the national surveys have a less than annual frequency, the Eurostat reference years will be a composite of national survey years that do not overlap precisely for each country. Of course, the Eurostat reference year should reflect of the actual situation in that year accurately. Eurostat uses appropriate national price indices to convert data into 1999 prices in order to give the consumption expenditure items the same base for comparisons.

Some countries have a legal framework for conducting the survey, either in the terms of a general statistical law governing the collection of statistics (Spain, Italy) or of a specific law specifying the circumstances related to collecting information on the consumption expenditure of private households (Germany). Households' participation in the survey is voluntary in all Member States. The surveys are conducted by the national statistical offices in all the countries.

Table 3: Timing of the national surveys, Eurostat reference year 1999

Belgium:	1999	Enquête sur les Budgets des Ménages
Denmark:	1997-1999	Forbrugsundersøgelsen
Germany:	1998	Einkommens- und Verbrauchsstichprobe
Greece:	November 1998 - October 1999	Family Budget Survey
Spain:	1998	Encuesta Continua de Presupuestos Familiares
France:	May 2000- April 2001	Enquête Budgets des Familles
Ireland:	June 1999- July 2000	Household Budget Survey
Italy:	1999	Rilevazione sui consumi delle famiglie italiane
Luxembourg:	1998	Enquête Budgets Familiaux
Netherlands:	1999	Budgetonderzoek
Austria:	November 1999 - October 2000	Konsumerhebung
Portugal:	January 2000 – January 2001	Inquérito aos orçamentos familiares
Finland:	1998	Kulutustutkimus
Sweden:	May 1999 – April 2000	Hushållens utgifter
United Kingdom:	April 1999 – March 2000	Family Expenditure Survey

The following diagram presents the collaboration framework between the National Statistics Institutes and Eurostat for the HBS.

Figure 1: Collaboration framework for HBS

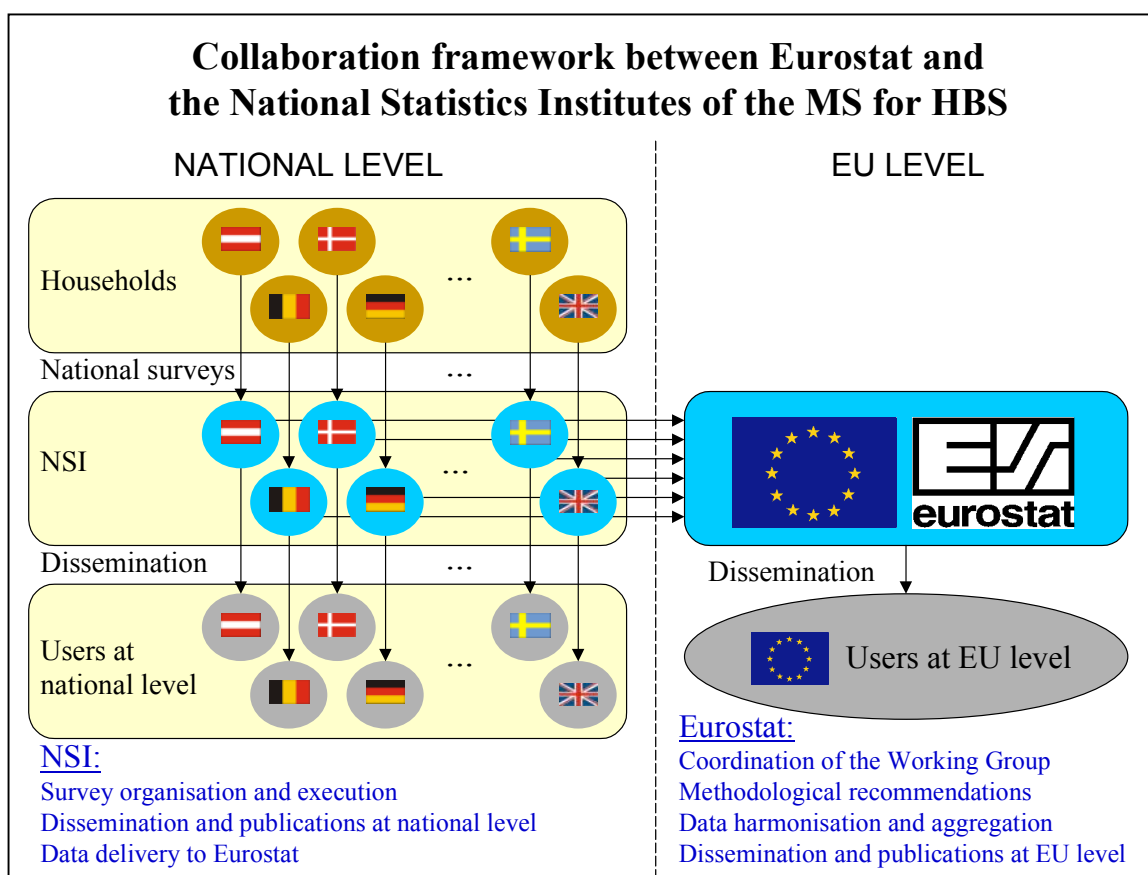


Table 4 gives an overview of the timing and frequency of the national surveys until 2001 and the plans until 2006.

Table 4: Survey Timing and Frequency

	B	DK	D	EL	E	F	IRL	I	L	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK
First survey	1957	1955	1962-63	1957-58	1958	1965	1951-52	1968	1956-57	1978	1954	1967-68	1966	1958	1953-54
1963	EU	X	EU		EU		EU	EU	EU						X
1977					X			X	X						X
1978	xA		A		X	xA		X		X				X	X
1979	x				X	x		A		A					A
1980					A		A	X		X		x			X
1981		A		x	X			X		X		x	X		X
1982				xA	X			X		X					X
1983			B		X			X		X					X
1984						xB		X		X	X				X
1985					B	x		B		B			X	X	B
1986					X			X	xC	X					X
1987	xC	C		x	X		B,C	X	x	X					X
1988	x		C	xB, C	C			C		C				C	X
1989					X	C		X		X		xC			X
1990					C,D			X		X		x	C		X
1991					X			X		X					X
1992					X			X		X				D	X
1993			D	xD	X			X	D	X	xD				X
1994		D		x	D	xD	xD	D		D	x	xD	D		xD
1995	xD	D			X	x	x	X		X		x	D	X	x
1996	x	X			X			X		X			X	X	x
1997	x	X			X			X		X					x
1998	x	XE	XE1		XE			X	XE	X			XE		x
1999	XE	X	X2	XE	X		xE	XE		XE	xE			xE	xE
2000	X	X	X2		X	xE	x	X		X	x	xE		x	x
2001	X	X	X2		X			X				x	x		x
Planned															
2002	X	X	X2		X			X	X				x		x
2003	X	X	X1		X			X	X	X				X	x
2004	X	X	X2	XF	X			X	X	X	xF			X	x
2005	XF	XF	X3		XF	xF	xF	XF	XF	XF	x	XF	XF	XF	xF
2006	X	X	X3		X			X	X	X				X	x

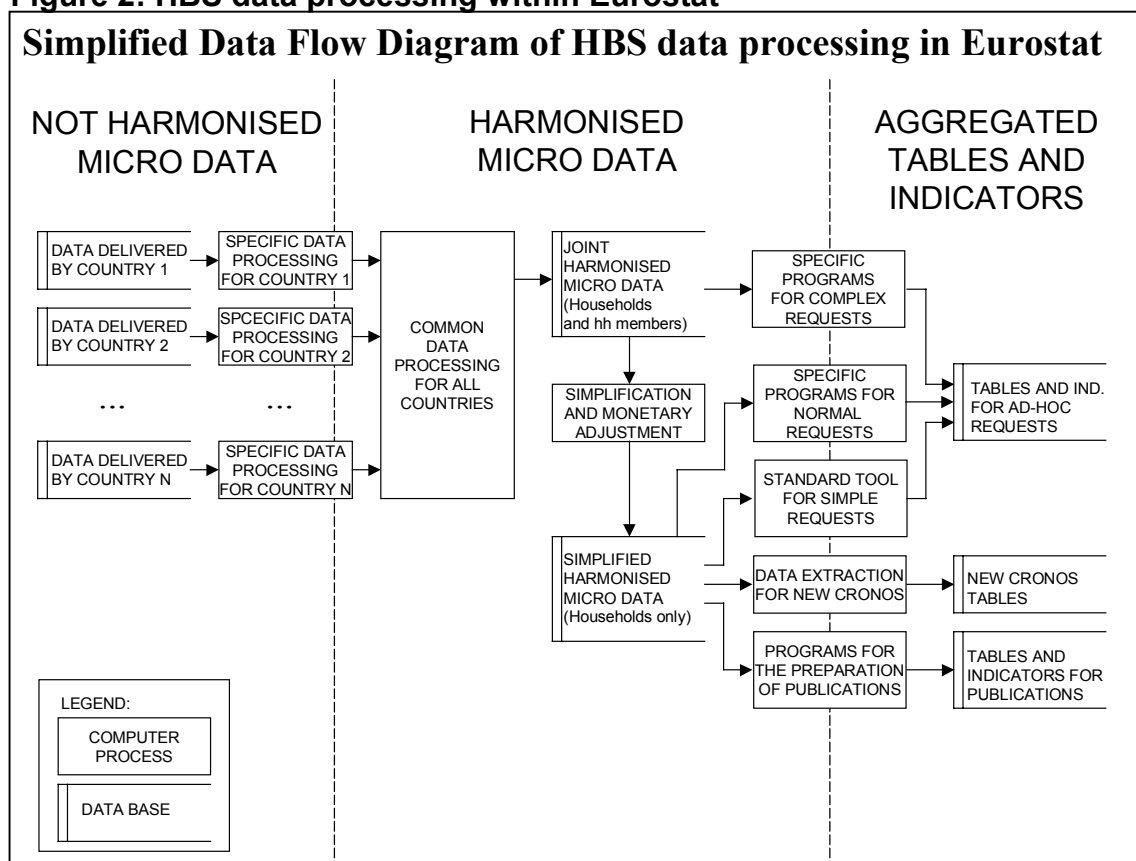
- X: Survey conducted during the calendar year
x: Survey conducted during 12 months spread over 2 calendar years
EU: The standardised Community Survey of 1963-1964 conducted in the original six Member States
A: Included in Eurostat Comparative Tables for reference year 1979 (10 countries)
B: Included in Eurostat Comparative Tables for reference year 1985 (8 countries)
C: Included in Eurostat Comparative Tables for reference year 1988 (12 countries)
D: Included in Eurostat Comparative Tables for reference year 1994 (18 countries including Iceland, Norway and Switzerland)
E: Included in Eurostat Comparative Tables for reference year 1999 (16 countries including Norway)
F: To be included in Eurostat Comparative Tables for reference year 2005
1 German EVS (around 60000 sample size. Every five years)
2 German new LWR (around 6000 sample size, Quarterly)
3 3 German new annual survey in combination with EU-SILC

To finalise this Chapter, we show a simplified data flow diagram presenting the HBS data processing carried out in order to satisfy the needs of users at European level. This diagram reflects the three most common channels used by Eurostat to deliver HBS information:

- by means of New Cronos (the general statistical data base of Eurostat)
- by means of publications (either on paper or in electronic format)
- by answering specific request coming from the European Commission, the other European Institutions or any other requester.

So far, Eurostat has not been allowed to deliver HBS microdata.

Figure 2: HBS data processing within Eurostat



CHAPTER 4 CONCEPTS, DEFINITIONS AND CLASSIFICATIONS

This chapter gives a description of the currently used definitions of the household and the head of household adopted by the Member States in the HBS, and also the definitions recommended by Eurostat in order to obtain a better harmonisation and thus more comparable data. The concept of consumption expenditure is discussed extensively. Finally, a certain number of borderline cases are considered.

Given that the Household Budget Surveys are output-harmonised, Eurostat does not emphasise use of same questions, same survey structure or sample designs in the surveys, but some importance is put into harmonising the concepts and definitions. There are two reasons for this; first it could be argued that the adoption of certain definitions and concepts is not specifically based on national circumstances but has a more universal character in relation to obtaining a valid output; secondly, the use of certain definitions and concepts can often be justified by the general nature of the survey and not the particular circumstances under which it is implemented.

It is obvious that the combination of having microdata and the aim of an output harmonisation of the HBS means that Eurostat can, as far as all the basic variables are available in the original data set, redefine terms in order to follow the recommended approach. This is what is done, for example, for determining the reference person. The consequence is that the output produced by Eurostat might not be strictly comparable with each national output, but it will be comparable between countries.

Eurostat aims at maximising the integration of HBS definitions and classifications in the European System of Accounts (ESA) and harmonised index of consumer prices (HICP), for the household expenditures part, and in the Eurostat's harmonisation initiative for the main background variables. Now that HBS, ESA, HICP and PPP all use the COICOP classification of expenditures as a standard, a sound basis has been laid for further matching measurement of expenditures in the HBS with ESA and HICP.

The status of Eurostat's harmonisation proposals take the form of recommended standard or, when there are substantial difficulties to obtain the information required, recommended best practice. In the recommendations for the HBS all purposes are considered, with the order of priority ESA, HICP and living conditions. Recommendations apply to the next waves after 1999, of which the results are published by Eurostat.

4.1 MAIN CONCEPTS AND DEFINITIONS

4.1.1 DEFINITION OF THE HOUSEHOLD

The basic unit of data collection and analysis in Household Budget surveys is the household. How the household is defined is important for two reasons. Firstly, as a unit for selection of the sample, the definition as adopted influences the survey's coverage of the population. The objective is to define the household such that each person in the study population belongs to one and only one household, so that a sample of households provides coverage for the entire population of interest. Even when the ultimate sampling units are dwellings or addresses, the final objective is to enumerate a sample of households and persons.

The most straightforward approach to meeting this objective is to define a household in terms of persons sharing a common accommodation or address, so that a frame of dwellings or addresses directly gives a representative sample of households and persons. This is indeed the approach followed in many population censuses, and also in some large-scale surveys of the population. In this respect the recommendations for the 1990 and 2000 rounds of population and housing censuses for the ECE region⁶ can be an input to the definitions and concepts used in the Household Budget surveys, but the particular purposes for which the surveys are conducted should be kept in mind when applying such concepts or definitions. Hence, it will often be necessary to add additional qualifications to the definitions in order to fulfil the ambitions set out in the survey aims. The criteria of sharing expenses or 'daily needs' in the household definition would often be cited as necessary in order to get a correct picture of the consumption expenditures of a household.

In all Household Budget surveys in the EU, the household is defined more clearly as a *social* unit which meets one or more conditions of 'living together' in addition to having a common residence. This is the household defined as a housekeeping unit. Of course in practice there is mostly a one-to-one correspondence between households and dwellings/addresses, but there are also cases with multiple households per dwelling. Such cases must be handled properly in the sampling procedure adopted to ensure that all households and persons are covered.

This is particularly important in relation to domestic employees, boarders, lodgers, long-term visitors, and other such persons who are not a part of the main family residing at the address.

The second consideration, particularly important in the case of Household Budget surveys, is the definition of the household as a substantive unit. The household is not only a unit of data collection but also the basic unit of analysis. Though in principle it is often possible to assign components of household income to individual persons in the household (and the accurate measurement of household income requires identification of the incomes of individual members), it is not always reasonable to divide up the household income in this manner. In any case, consumption – which is in general the main focus of the survey – cannot be apportioned among the household members on the basis of the type of data collected in Household Budget surveys. The same applies to possessions, utilities and other household amenities. These characteristics can be ascribed to individuals within the household for individual-level analysis but this requires the use of models based on assumptions of individual behaviour. It is a fact that with increasing individualisation of the society, there is an increasing need to analyse the survey data at individual level as well.

Increasingly restrictive definitions of what constitutes a household can be achieved by adding criteria from (1) to (4) below:

- (1) Co-residence (living together in the same dwelling unit)
- (2) Sharing of expenditures including joint provision of essentials of living
- (3) Pooling of income and resources
- (4) The existence of family or emotional ties

⁶ 'Recommendations for the 1990 Censuses of Population and Housing in the ECE region' UN, New York, 1987.

'Draft Recommendations for the 2000 Round of Population and Housing Censuses in the ECE region', 1996, publication forthcoming.

Table 5: Definition of household

	Households defined as persons sharing:			
	accomodation	expenditure	income	family emotional ties
B	X	X		
DK	X	X	X	
D	X	X	X	
GR	X	X		
E	X	X		
F	X			
IRL	X	X		
I	X	X	X	X
L	X	X		
NL	X	X		
A	X	X		
P	X	X		
FIN	X	X	X	
S	X	X	X	
UK	X	X		

Despite having the household as the common survey unit, countries differ in the manner in which it is defined. Table 5 lists the basic definitions adopted in terms of these criteria. In all countries, one or more of the criteria, other than common residence, i.e. sharing of meals and/or other essentials of living is also included. The distinction between having common meals and sharing expenditures is not always made, though the sharing of meals or catering arrangements is explicitly mentioned in countries including Belgium, Denmark, Greece, Spain, Ireland, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Portugal, Finland, Sweden and United Kingdom. The pooling of income and resources as an additional condition is mentioned in Denmark, Germany, Italy, Finland and Sweden. The most 'restrictive' definition, involving all the four criteria, is that used in Italy.

Eurostat recommends that the definition of the household for the purpose of HBS is based on the first two criteria shown above; co-residence and sharing of expenditures. This definition isolates the units which, from a HBS perspective, form a whole for studying patterns of consumption expenditures and income.

4.1.2 MEMBERS OF A HOUSEHOLD

In practice these rather succinct definitions need to be elaborated to specify exactly what categories of persons are included and excluded from the definition. The definition adopted has a bearing, for instance, on whether or not resident employees, lodgers, boarders and other unrelated persons living at the sample address are included in the same or as a separate household. This affects the average household size and composition, as well as the coverage achieved in the survey. Furthermore, the definition is often extended to include certain categories of persons who are absent from the household for some specified reason, such as full-time education or military service. Countries differ in the exact rules applied for this purpose as well as the operational meaning given to the four criteria noted above. Many countries mention, though, as general criteria, that a potential member is included in the household if there are economic links between the person and the household.

Table 6: Persons included as household members by residential status

	B	DK	D	GR	E	F	IRL	I	L	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK
Normal resident, related to head/spouse	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	(15)	X	X (11)	X	X	X	X	X
Resident employee, domestic servant living in household						X	X			X (11)		X			
Resident border, tenant						X	X			X (11)		X			
Long term absentee present during recording period				X (2)		X				X (11)	X				
Visitor				X	X (3)							X			X (9)
Resident temporarily away		X	X	X (2)	X (4)	X	X		X	X (11)	X	X	X (7)	X	
Long term absence with household ties:															
- students, boarding school pupils	X (1)			X (2)	X (5)	X	X		X	X (11)	X	X	X (8)		X (10)
- hospitalised persons etc.	X (1)			X (2)	X (14)	X	X (13)		X (6)	X (12)	X	X	X		

- (1) Except if they are absent during the whole month of the survey
- (2) On condition that (a) they did not move to a private household, within Greece, (b) it was possible to provide a detailed record of their personal expenditures for at least eight days.
- (3) Only if he habitually lives in the household.
- (4) Only if he has economic links with the household.
- (5) Students: Only if he has economic links with the household and does not live with another household.
- (6) Persons in prisons are not counted as member of the household.
- (7) If they contribute to the household income.
- (8) Except if there are living away on own obtained grants.
- (9) If the stay in the household is for more than one month.
- (10) Students older than 16 years of age are not included if they are living away from the household at the time of interview.
- (11) Decisive for inclusion as household member is that the person is present in the household during a period that includes the intensive recording period and whether the start or the end of the survey year.
- (12) Hospitalised persons are household members if the hospitalisation period is shorter than 1 year.
- (13) If at home in the household during the period of the survey
- (14) In general, persons living in a collective dwelling are members of their household of origin, if they have economic links with it and they aim to return to it
- (15) Information not available

An attempt has been made in Table 6 to provide an overview of the main categories of persons included and excluded, though it must be admitted that the position is not absolutely clear in all cases from the available survey documentation. In Italy, for example, persons are included in the household if they ‘habitually’ live there. The enforcement of strict rules is often difficult in the concrete situation where the interviewer is confronted with having to make a choice. In these circumstances, it would often be the availability of information on the potential member, which is decisive for inclusion or not.

On the other hand, it is desirable that countries try to apply a consistent set of rules as far as possible. For the SILC⁷ project, a precise definition of household membership has been developed to be applied in all Member States. This definition is detailed in a Commission Regulation on definitions and is reproduced below:

The household members are the persons belonging to one of the following categories:

- (1) *Usually resident, related to other members*
- (2) *Usually resident, not related to other members*
- (3) *Resident boarder, lodger, tenant*
- (4) *Visitor*

⁷ *Statistics on Income and Living Conditions. The SILC project will be based on a framework Regulation of the European Parliament and of the Council and complemented by Commission implemented Regulations.*

(5) *Live-in domestic servant, au-pair*

(6) *Resident, absent from dwelling in the short-term (e.g. holiday, work, education)*

(7) *Children of household, in education away from home*

(8) *Long-term absence with household ties: working away from home*

(9) *Temporary absence with household ties: in hospital, nursing home or other institution*

are members of the household if they:

(a) *share household expenses*

and

for categories (3) (4) (5)

(b) *currently have no private address elsewhere or their actual or intend duration of stay is 6 months or more*

for category (6)

(b) *currently have no private address elsewhere and their actual or intend duration of absence from the household is less than 6 months*

for categories (7) and (8), irrespective of the actual or intended duration of absence, the person

(b) *currently has no private address elsewhere, is partner or child of a household member, and who continues to retain close ties with the household and consider this address to be his/her main residence*

and for category (9)

(b) *the person has clear financial ties to the household and the actual or expected duration of absence from the household is less than 6 months*

Shares in household expenses include benefiting from expenses (e.g. children, persons with no income) as well as contributing to expenses. If expenses are not shared, then the person constitutes a separate household at the same address.

A person will be considered a usually resident member of the household if he/she spends most of his/her daily night-rest there, evaluated over the past six months. Persons forming new households or joining existing households will normally be considered members at their new location; similarly, those leaving to live elsewhere will no longer be considered members of the original household. The above mentioned 'past six-month' criteria will be replaced by the intention to stay for a period of 6 months or more at the new place of residence.

Account has to be taken of what may be considered as 'permanent' movements in or out of households. Thus a person who has moved into a household for an indefinite period or with the intention to stay for a period of 6 months or more will be considered a household member, even though the person has not yet stayed in the household for 6 months, and has in fact spent a majority of that time at some other place of residence. Similarly, a persons who has moved out of the household to some other place of residence with the intention to stay away for 6 months or more, will no longer be considered a member of the previous household.

If the person who is temporarily absent is in private accommodation, then whether they are members of this (or their other) household depends on the length of their absence. Exceptionally, certain categories of persons with very close ties to the household may be included as members irrespective of the length of absence, provided they are not considered members of another private household.

In the application of these criteria, the intention would be to minimise the risk that individuals who have two private addresses at which they might potentially be enumerated are not double-counted in the sampling frame. Similarly, the intention would be to minimise the risk of some persons being excluded from membership of any household, even though in reality they belong to the private household sector

Eurostat recommends using for the HBS the same definitions of Household Membership proposed for the EU-SILC project.

4.1.3 HEAD OF HOUSEHOLD AND REFERENCE PERSON

In each household it is necessary to identify as its head (or reference person) a particular individual whose personal characteristics can be used in the classification and analysis of information on the household. The social group, occupation and employment status, income, sex and age etc. of the head are often used to classify the sample households for presentation of the results and for weighting classifications used in the derivation of the survey estimates. The identification of such a person can also be relevant in the collection of the data, for instance in determining the appropriate respondent for certain items of information if not all respondents are asked about the same individual information.

In order to clarify the terminology, from now on we shall call *head of household* the person designated in each original national survey and *reference person* the persons complying with the harmonised criteria recommended by Eurostat and designated for the European Household Budget Survey statistics.

Table 7 lists the main criteria used in the definition of household head. Obviously a person must be a household member to be designated as its head. A common practice used in some countries (Ireland, Luxembourg, Portugal and Finland) is to consider as head, the person designated as such by the household concerned. Some countries use more objective and specific criteria such as the person contributing most to the income of the household (Belgium, Denmark, Germany, the Netherlands, Austria and Spain); the person owning or renting the household accommodation (United Kingdom); or the oldest active male (Greece).

Table 7: Definition of head of household

B	The person who contributes most to the household financial resources
DK	Largest gross taxable income
D	Person contributing most to the total income of the household 2)
GR	i) the father or mother if they are economically active ii) the oldest working member of the household iii) the oldest member
E	Largest regular contributor to budget
F	Several successive criteria are used: 1) if it is a household with a couple, the man is the head of household; 2) if it is a household without a couple, it is the parent or the employed person or the oldest member who is appointed as the reference person.
IRL	Self-defined
I	The name referred to in the Register as the head of household
L	Self-defined (main decision maker)
NL	Principal wage earner (member with the highest personal income)
A	Person contributing most to the total income of the household
P	Self-defined
FIN	Self-defined
S	Depending on domain of study: oldest member in core household or adult person with highest socio-economic code
UK	Owner of dwelling or legally responsible for the rent of the dwelling

(1) Consistent with the definition used in the Labour Force survey.

(2) EVS 1998: designated (by household) in the introductory interview; ex-post-verified by diaries plausibility checks (by statistical office).

It is also common to use a hierarchy of criteria in combination. There are often implicit preferences for certain categories of persons (such as males over females and older over younger persons), whatever formal definition is used. In Ireland, while it is left to the household to determine who is the head, it is noted that the head is generally "the person who owns or rents the accommodation" and that "the oldest member is taken as the head in the absence of other influencing factors". Similar is the procedure in Germany, where head of household, though in principle self-defined, is normally the member with the largest income.

For the EU Comparative Tabulations it is important to identify and apply a consistent definition of a reference person which can be used in the classification and analysis of information on the household. Hence, if the relevant information is not available on all household members for determining a reference person in all surveys, there is a consistency problem, as countries do not use the same definition of the head of household.

Eurostat recommends that the assignment of the reference person should be based on objective criteria. For the tabulation of consumption patterns in the Household Budget surveys, the appropriate criterion is the contribution to household income, by preference the person to be chosen should be the adult (16+) contributing most to the total income of the household.

Leaving the choice of the reference person to the household itself gives too much space for arbitrary decisions that will damage the comparability of data afterwards. By assigning the person who contributes most to the household income, there should be a clear connection between the income of the household and its expenditure patterns (see also the list of variables in Annex 2).

4.1.4 CHILD-ADULT DEFINITION

For various purposes it is also necessary to classify household members into adults and children. Different age limits or other criteria may be used in this classification for different purposes. One of them is the requirement to identify persons who have to complete the individual diary in surveys where this type of diary is used. The age limits used by the Member States are different as shown in the Survey Profiles (Annex 1).

In most countries the definition of the child can be adapted depending on the need for analysis. Thus, in the derived variables in the EU Comparative Tabulation plan proposed by Eurostat, more classifications are used for type of household. In order to allow *a posteriori* harmonisation, the variable list includes the age of all the household members.

In order to calculate the variables connected with type of household, the following information must be available:

- children up to 13 years (inclusive)
- children aged 14 to 16
- children up to 18 years (inclusive)
- older children
- adult children

For more precise reference, please consult section “2.1.2.2. *Type of household*” of Annex 2.

4.2 THE ESA 95 CONCEPT OF FINAL HOUSEHOLD CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE

There are two relevant conceptual bases in ESA for household consumption expenditures: **‘household actual final consumption’** (ESA 95, 3.81–84) and **‘household final consumption expenditure’** (ESA 95, 3.75–3.77). The first is defined as (ESA 95, 3.82):

“Goods and services for individual consumption (‘individual goods and services’) are acquired by a household and used to satisfy the needs and wants of members of that household. Individual goods and services have the following characteristics:

- a) It must be possible to observe and record the acquisition of the good or services by an individual household or member thereof and also the time at which it took place.*
- b) the household must have agreed to the provision of the good or service and take whatever action is necessary to make it possible, for example by attending a school or clinic;*
- c) the good or service must be such that its acquisition by one household or person, or possibly by small, restricted group of persons, precludes its acquisition by other households or persons.”*

Services for collective consumption (such as national defence, the usage of public infrastructures or public broadcasting) as defined in ESA 95 3.83 are not considered as household consumption.

Household actual final consumption consists of the acquisitions households obtain through their spending on consumption goods and services in their own country or abroad (**‘household final consumption expenditure’**) and acquisitions from the government and non-profit institutions

serving households (NPISH), which are essentially provisions in kind to the households ('social transfers in kind', such as some medical devices).⁸

"By convention, there are no social transfers in kind with the Rest of the World (though there are such transfers in monetary terms)." (ESA 95, 3.88 / SNA 9.72).

GOVERNMENT INDIVIDUAL FINAL CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURES

For the goods and services provided by government units, the borderline between individual and collective goods and services is drawn on the basis of the Classification of the Functions of Government (COFOG).

By convention, all government final consumption expenditures under each of the following headings should be treated as *expenditures on individual consumption services* except for expenditures on general administration, regulation, research, etc. in each category:

- 04 Education;
- 05 Health;
- 06 Social Security and Welfare;
- 08.01 Sport and recreation;
- 08.02 Culture.

In addition, expenditures under the following sub-headings should also be treated as individual when they are important:

- 07.11 (part of) the provision of housing;
- 07.31 (part of) the collection of household refuse;
- 12.12 (part of) the operation of transport system.

ESA 95, 3.85

"The social transfers in kind consist of individual goods and services provided as transfers in kind to individual households by government units and NPISH, whether purchased on the market or produced as non-market output by government unit or NPISH. They may be financed out of taxation, other government income or social security contributions, or out of donations and property income in the case of NPISH" (ESA 95, 4.104).

By definition, additions to savings, amounts invested or loaned, repayments of loans (e.g. interest on mortgages) and outlays, gambling losses, cash grants and donations (except small contributions of a recurrent nature to churches and charitable institutions) for other financial transactions are non-consumption expenditures.

Household final consumption expenditure has a monetary and a non-monetary part. The monetary part covers all cash payments, whereas the non-monetary part includes:

- a) services of owner-occupied dwellings (measured as an imputed rental);
- b) income in kind, such as:
 - (1) goods and services received as income in kind by employees;
 - (2) goods or services produced as outputs of incorporated enterprises owned by households that are retained for consumption by members of the household. Cases in point are food

⁸ At the level of the total economy, final consumption expenditure and actual final consumption are equal; it is only the distribution over the institutional sectors, which differs. The same is true of disposable income and adjusted disposable income (see later on in this section).

and other agricultural goods, housing services by owner-occupiers and household services produced by employing paid staff (servants, cooks, gardeners, chauffeurs, etc.). Household final monetary consumption expenditure is the conceptual base for the HICP.

Households actual final consumption

- Social transfers in kind by the government to the households	
- Social transfers in kind by the NPISH to the households	
= Households final consumption expenditure	<i>ESA 95, 3.74 and 3.86</i>

- Non-monetary expenditure	
= Household final monetary consumption expenditure	<i>HICP</i>

For the HBS data collection of reference year 1999, the Member States used various concepts of consumption expenditures as shown in the following table:

Table 8: Concept of consumption expenditures used in Member States

	B	DK	D	EL	E	F	IRL	I (5)	L (5)	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK	Eurostat Recomm.
Actual final consumption						(1)	X					X			X (2)	
Final consumption expenditure	X	X	X	X	X	X				X	X		X	X (3)	X (2)	X
Monetary consumption expenditure	X	X		X	X	X									X	X (4)
Other (indicate)																

- (1) The French HBS collects data that allow the estimation for non-monetary consumption expenditures, such as production for own consumption or housing services for owners-occupiers. Fictive rents estimates are not disseminated though but kept for internal usage
- (2) Actual final consumption is published at aggregate level in the "Blue Book", but is not part of the HBS. Final consumption expenditure is also published at aggregate level, in "Consumer Trends". Again, it does not form part of the HBS.
- (3) Excluding the value of internal production.
- (4) Only to carry out comparisons with HCIP data.
- (5) Information not available

Requirements for HBS

For the purpose of measuring living conditions the essential reference for the HBS is the concept of **'household final consumption expenditure'**. Eurostat recognises that the concept of **'household actual final consumption expenditure'** would be more suitable, since it is based on the 'acquisition' idea. However, Member States' practical difficulties with implementing it prevented this concept being used in the 1999 round of the HBS. In particular with health and education items, actual use cannot even be observed at the individual household level: in almost all the EU15 countries expenditures are mainly public and are financed through taxes and/or premiums. Section 4.4.4. will present the results of an Expert Group Meeting on the subject, and will establish some practical recommendations for the future. In other fields such as transport, recreation and culture which are also partly financed by the government, comparability is probably only marginally affected. Therefore, Eurostat does not consider a change of the current practice to be pertinent.

For the other goods and services categories that give acceptable comparability in the HBS, Eurostat recommends aiming for a full match with the ESA and HICP definitions except for a limited number of cases where the macro concepts used in the National Accounts conflict with the micro concepts used in the HBS. Further it is recommended that these cases with different definitions are documented and, if possible, quantified. Tables 9 and 10 give an overview of the use made of the HBS for ESA and HICP purposes. In the fields of health and education, the Member State source for prices and weightings is intended to be government agencies, social security administrations or NPISH (Council Regulation (EC) No 2166/1999 of 8 October 1999⁹).

Recommendation for HBS

Taking into consideration the practical difficulties for the measurement of the 'household actual final consumption' in many Member States, Eurostat recommends that the 'household final consumption expenditure' continue to be the conceptual base of the Household Budget surveys for the 2005 round.

Table 9: Importance of HBS as a source for ESA 95 by COICOP division, HBS reference year 1999^{*) 1)}

COICOP	B	DK	D	EL	E	F	IRL	I	L	NL (2)	A	P	FIN	S	UK
Food and non-alcoholic beverages	1	1	3	2	1	3	2	:	:	2	2	1	1	1	1
Alcoholic beverages, tobacco and narcotics	3	4	3	2	4	2-3	4	:	:	2	2	1	4	4	4
Clothing and footwear	1	1	3	2	1	3	2	:	:	2	2		1	1	3
Housing, water, electricity, gas and other fuels	2	4	3	2	2	3	1	:	:	2	2	2	1	2	2
Furnishing, household equipment and routine maintenance of the house	1	1	3	1	2	4	2	:	:	2	2	2	1	1	3
Health	4	1	3	2	2	4	1	:	:	2	2	2	2	2	1
Transport	2	1	2	2	2	4	2	:	:	2	2	2	2	2	3
Communication	3	1	1	2	3	4	2	:	:	2	1	2	1	1	2
Recreation and culture	2	1	2	1	3	3	1	:	:	2	2	2	2	1	2
Education	4	4	2	1	3	4	1	:	:	2	2	2	2	2	4
Restaurants and hotels	2	4	3	1	3	3-4	1	:	:	2	2	1	4	4	1
Miscellaneous goods and services	4	2	3	1	3	4	1	:	:	2	2	2	1	2	2

* 1=very important; 2=important; 3=comparatively unimportant; 4 =not a source; ":"=information not available.

1) Source: Member State statement.

2) In the Netherlands the HBS is used by estimating the consumption matrix in ESA. Every survey-year a table with consumption by distribution channel is delivered.

⁹ Official Journal L 266 , 14/10/1999 p. 0001 – 0003.

Table 10: Importance of HBS as a source for the HICP by COICOP division, HBS reference year 1999 ^{*) 1)}

COICOP	B	DK	D	EL	E	F (2)	IRL	I	L	NL (3)	A	P	FIN	S	UK (4)
Food and non-alcoholic beverages	1	1	1	1	1	3	2	:	:	1	1	1	2	1	1
Alcoholic beverages, tobacco and narcotics	1	1	1	1	1	3	4	:	:	1	2	1	4	4	4
Clothing and footwear	1	1	1	1	1	3	2	:	:	1	1	2	2	1	3
Housing, water, electricity, gas and other fuels	1	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	1	2	3	4	2
Furnishing, household equipment and routine maintenance of the house	1	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	1	2	2	1	3
Health	2	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	2	2	2	1	1
Transport	1	1	1	1	1	3	2	:	:	1	1	2	2	2	2
Communication	1	1	1	1	1	3	2	:	:	1	2	2	3	1	2
Recreation and culture	2	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	1	2	2	1	2
Education	1	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	2	2	3	1	4
Restaurants and hotels	2	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	3	1	2	4	1
Miscellaneous goods and services	2	1	1	1	1	3	1	:	:	1	1	2	2	1	1

* 1=very important; 2=important; 3=comparatively unimportant; 4=not a source; “:”=information not available.

- (1) Source: Member State statement.
- (2) These figures describe the use of the 1994-1995 HBS since the reference year 1999 has not been used yet.
- (3) However, it is highly probable that the new HBS will be used more extensively by the HICP Unit, since the survey collects data about outlets.
- (4) In the Netherlands the HBS is very important for the HICP in the so-called reference years: the years ending ‘0’ or ‘5’. So HBS-2000 will be of great importance for HICP: it provides data for the weighting scheme to calculate the consumer price-index. This weighting scheme used to be updated every five years. In future years it will probably be updated every year. So in that case HBS will be every year of great importance for HICP.
- (5) Importance of HBS as a source for the HICP by COICOP division HICP takes its expenditure data from ESA rather than directly from HBS, so the figures for the UK column of this table are the same as for table 6. Two exceptions are that HICP uses data directly from the HBS for two items, domestic air fares and package holidays.

4.3 THE CONCEPT OF NET INCOME

Disposable income

Income is commonly used to distinguish consumption expenditure patterns of specific household income groups in the HBS. It is consequently important to define income and consumption in a consistent way. The income concept to be used in combination with *household final consumption expenditure* is *disposable income* (ESA 95, 8.31 and 8.32) whereas the concept to be used in combination with *households actual final consumption expenditures* is *adjusted disposable income* (ESA 95, 8.33-8.35).

For more detailed information as well for the definitions of primary income (ESA 95, 8.22) and secondary income (ESA 95, 8.30), please refer to the ESA 1995 documentation.

Net income

Since the Household Budget surveys are conducted directly on a sample of households, it appears impossible to collect the income data using breakdown and definitions identical to those outlined by ESA 95 for the disposable income. It is because of the conceptual differences between national accounts and the Household Budget surveys that it is preferable to use the term 'net income' instead of 'disposable income'. The differences are underlined in this chapter, but can be summarised in a single line: the treatment of own production and imputed rent is not identical.

In order to harmonise the concept of income in the Household Budget surveys, Eurostat proposes to adopt a certain number of conventions and in particular to use a common list of income components (see Annex 2). This list should be sufficiently detailed so that the household income is complete and, simultaneously, sufficiently aggregated not to provoke too many "non-responses" from the surveyed households.

Moreover, previous experience in compiling European statistics of Household Budgets shows that Household Budget surveys used to significantly underestimate household income. For these reasons, Eurostat recommends to make limited use of the income information collected by HBS: to define income groups to be used only as additional explanatory information of the various patterns of consumption expenditure.

The following sections give more detail about the compilation of income data.

4.3.1. THE TREATMENT OF TAXES AND COMPULSORY SOCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS

This type of levy has to be subtracted from the income in order to ensure a good coherence between the data collected in terms of consumption expenditure and those collected in terms of income. Indeed, the amounts under consideration are not entered on the expenditure side and they must consequently be deducted from income. This takes into account the fact that the "income" is intended to represent the resources available to the households to consume and save.

The structure of the list of variables must take account of the taxation system in force in each country. For this reason the following conventions can be followed:

When taxes are deducted at source, as is the case for wages and salaries in almost all Member States, the income data will be transmitted to Eurostat net of tax. In cases where other taxes are levied after the income has been received (for example at the end of the fiscal year), this type of tax will only be deducted retrospectively (HH09.2).

In countries which collect taxes globally on the total income, deduction is retrospective (HH09.02). In this case, the taxes will be deducted only in the household's file since the taxes are generally paid by the household as a whole. However, the difficulty presented in this case is the discrepancy between the time of the data collection on income and the time of the tax payment. There could be a delay of a year between the two.

On the question of social contributions, it would also appear easier for the household to declare its net income (what it actually receives on its bank account after social contributions) rather than its gross income.

4.3.2. NON-MONETARY COMPONENTS OF INCOME

One part of the household income consists of non-monetary elements, which are also evaluated on the consumption expenditure side. They are benefits in kind, internal production and imputed rent (for definitions see section 4.4). These items are indeed consumed, but they equally contribute to an increase in the level of resources of households and of their 'well-being'. Thus, a double imputation is made (on the consumption expenditure and on the income side) with the purpose of ensuring good coherence between the uses and the resources.

The national accounts treatment is similar for benefits in kind, which are added to the compensation from work. However, internal production and imputed rent are not treated exactly the same way. In the national accounts, they are not included directly in the disposable income since they appear under resources in the production account (and thus influence the level of value added and indirectly the income) and under final consumption in the use of the income account. In the Household Budget surveys, it is recommended that they are combined with final consumption, but they should also be included directly in the total income for the reasons stated above.

4.3.3. PROPERTY INCOME AND RENTALS

Property income is a sensitive component to collect since it relates to resources generated from financial assets. As stated above, only real interest on certain loans and the income distributed by corporations (dividends) are taken into account. In contrast, sales and capital gains are excluded. As for other income, the tax is deducted from the values recorded, either directly or retrospectively.

Including property income in the Household Budget survey can lead households to under-estimation or even partially fail to respond. Even so, for certain categories of households, the sums involved can represent a substantial share of the total revenue and therefore influence their living standard.

For the same reasons, rents received by property owners should be listed. The amounts recorded are net, i.e. after deduction of tax, repayment of interest and costs for the maintenance and repair of the rented dwelling.

4.3.4. OTHER TRANSFERS

In national accounts, other transfers primarily concern insurance transactions other than compulsory social insurance. Such insurance is treated differently when calculating consumption expenditure in the Household Budget surveys. To ensure consistency between the recordings of consumption expenditure and the income, it is recommended not to take account of either insurance premiums or claims when calculating total income.

On the other hand, transfers to non-profit institutions serving households (NPISH), such as donations, fines and penalties payable by households, can be taken into account by deducing them from the total income. Similarly, transfers between households are recorded positively if received and negatively if made. This type of transfer corresponds to the amounts paid between the households themselves; for example, in the event of a regular payment.

The sums coming from games of chance are not taken into account as income, since this would create extreme values in the case of big wins. This recommendation could be modified for future surveys by including ‘non-extreme’ winnings, but in this case an objective limit should be fixed.

4.3.5. INDIVIDUAL INCOME AND HOUSEHOLD INCOME

In order to make a good estimate of income, data should be collected from each individual member of the household wherever possible. As a result the variables of the individual file are generally identical to those of the household file. Moreover, aggregating individual income arrives at the latter.

However, some income components are specific to the household and will therefore only appear in the household file. This is mainly non-monetary income (imputed rents, consumption of non-market output) and monetary income linked to housing (rents received by proprietors, housing allowance). To this list should be added the property income which it is undoubtedly preferable to request only at household level. In contrast, income in kind received in connection with work should be included in the individual file.

4.4 BORDERLINE CASES

In addition to the general principles described above, ESA requires further elaboration of definitions for some specific goods and services categories. These so-called borderline cases also indicate the HBS fields where coherence with the ESA and comparability are most difficult to achieve. Table 11 shows final consumption expenditures by households in ESA and the HBS for the 12 basic COICOP categories and eight EU15 countries. Obviously, expenditure shares on ‘housing’, ‘transport’, ‘health’ and ‘miscellaneous’ yield relatively large dispersions with ESA. Housing and health expenditure shares are higher in ESA than in HBS for most countries, while in the areas ‘transport’ and ‘miscellaneous’ the picture is more mixed between the countries.

Table 11: Household final consumption expenditure by COICOP category, HBS, 1999 and ESA (1) for eight Member States

COICOP	B	DK	D	E	I	A	FIN	S	Var
	%								
Food etc.	0	0	-1	3	4	1	1	3	2,8
Alcoholic beverages, etc.	-2	-1	-1	-1	-1	0	-3	-1	0,6
Clothing and footwear	0	1	-1	1	-2	0	0	0	0,6
Housing, water, etc.	2	1	7	13	5	4	3	-4	23,4
Furnishings, etc.	1	1	0	-1	-2	-1	0	0	1,0
Health	1	0	0	-1	1	-1	0	1	0,6
Transport	-3	0	-2	-1	1	2	3	0	3,9
Communications	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0,1
Recreation and culture	3	0	3	-2	-2	1	0	4	4,6
Education	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0,0
Restaurants and hotels	0	-1	0	-9	-4	-6	-3	-1	10,8
Miscellaneous	-2	-1	-5	-1	-1	1	0	0	3,0

1) Household final consumption expenditure shares in ESA and HBS calculated from national currencies.

Comparing HBS and HICP monetary expenditure shares, the picture is consistent for ‘health’ and ‘miscellaneous’ (HBS higher than HICP shares) and mixed for the two other items (Table 12).

Table 12: Differences in expenditure shares by COICOP category between HICP and HBS, 1999 ¹⁾

COICOP	B	DK	D	EL	E	FR	IRL	I	L	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK
	%					(2)	(3)					(3)			
Food etc.	-5	-3	-4	-5	-4	:	-3	4	-3	-3	0	-6	-2	0	-1
Alcoholic beverages, etc.	-1	-1	-3	-1	0	:	0	-1	-2	-2	-1	-1	-4	-2	-3
Clothing and footwear	-2	1	-2	-3	-2	:	1	-2	-2	0	-1	-1	0	-1	0
Housing, water, etc.	-1	1	10	0	-1	:	2	1	-3	15	3	9	-5	-7	-1
Furnishings, etc.	-1	1	-1	0	0	:	0	-2	-3	0	-2	-2	0	0	0
Health	5	2	3	7	2	:	1	3	3	1	2	5	3	3	1
Transport	0	-2	-2	0	2	:	3	0	3	0	1	-8	4	-2	0
Communications	0	0	0	1	1	:	1	0	1	0	1	-1	1	-1	0
Recreation and culture	0	3	0	1	1	;	-1	0	-1	0	2	-1	1	6	3
Education	1	0	0	2	2	:	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
Restaurants and hotels	-1	-2	-1	-2	-1	:	-11	-5	4	-5	-10	-1	-3	-1	-2
Miscellaneous	6	2	-1	1	1	:	6	1	2	-5	3	2	5	5	2

1) Household final monetary consumption expenditure shares in HICP and HBS calculated from national currencies.

2) Information not available

3) Provisional data

The items to be discussed as borderline cases are the four product categories; the description, however is restricted to the items which are dealt with specifically in the ESA 95 regulation, *i.e.* **goods retained for own final consumption, leasing and hire purchases, health, education, insurance** (part of the ‘miscellaneous’ category) and other expenditure categories such as **income in kind** as compensation of employees, intra-household **gifts and transfers, second hand goods**, etc. Under the heading of products retained for own final consumption, imputed rentals for owner-occupied housing will be dealt with. **Housing expenditures** other than (imputed) rentals will be dealt with separately.

4.4.1 GOODS OR SERVICES RETAINED FOR OWN FINAL CONSUMPTION

Definition

In ESA 95, goods and services retained by the household for own final consumption are part of final consumption expenditure.

Products¹⁰ typically retained by the household for own final consumption are (ESA 95, 3.76):

- goods or services produced as outputs of unincorporated enterprises owned by households that are retained for consumption by members of the household (*i.e.* withdrawals from stocks in the retail trade: food, cigarettes, liquor, etc.)
- agricultural products;
- housing services produced by owner-occupiers;
- household services produced by employing paid staff.

¹⁰ ‘Product’ is the generic term applied to goods and services together.

Category b) relates to all households — a farming household or one whose ancillary activity is connected with agriculture (possession of a vegetable garden) or a farming household.

A number of **non-material cultural, everyday-life and public service activities** intended to meet specific needs of both each individual and society as a whole – categories c) and d) excluded – are not counted as production in ESA and as a result are not part of own consumption, even when ‘produced’ and consumed within the same household:

1. cleaning, decoration and maintenance of the dwelling as far as these activities are also common for tenants;
2. cleaning, servicing and minor repair of household durable goods;
3. preparation and serving of meals;
4. care, training and instruction of children;
5. care of sick, infirm or old people;
6. transportation of members of the household or their goods.

Conversely, any material bought for these service activities should be accounted as consumption expenditure (ESA 95, 3.76).

It is, however, recognised in ESA that while excluding particularly these categories, the standard framework and its major aggregates do not describe changes in welfare. Satellite accounts can serve the purpose of extended data needs by enlarging the scope of the accounting framework by adding non-monetary information (ESA 95, 1.19). Extended accounts can be drawn up which include also the imputed monetary values of e.g. the personal services produced and consumed within the same household (ESA 95, 1.22) just mentioned.

Recording and valuation

According to the ESA, expenditures on a **good** are to be recorded at the time of ownership change, whereas the expenditure on a **service** is to be recorded when the delivery of the service is completed. Expenditures by general government on goods and services supplied to households via market producers (i.e. social transfers in kind) are recorded at the time of delivery (ESA 95 3.89-3.99).

Own-account consumption should be recorded when the output retained for own final consumption is produced (ESA, 3.91). According to ESA 95, output for own final use (ESA 95, 3.49), in general, is to be valued at the **basic prices** (ESA 95, 3.48 and 3.49) of similar products sold on the market. However, to make it possible to compare consumption expenditure in different households **purchasers price** is recommended for the HBS. This is the price that a purchaser actually pays for the products at the time of the purchase; thus including any taxes less subsidies (but excluding deductible taxes like VAT on the products); including transport charges paid separately by the purchaser to take delivery at the required time and place; after deductions for any discounts for bulk or off-peak-purchases from standard prices or charges; excluding interest or services charges added under credit arrangements; excluding any extra charges incurred as a result of failing to pay within the period stated at the time the purchases were made (ESA 95, 3.06).

Recommendation for HBS

Own-account production of a good or service for own consumption by the household is to be recorded only if this type of production is significant, i.e. if it is believed to be quantitatively significant for specific households (greater than 0,1% of total consumption expenditure), i.e. farmers, households in the retail trade and/or with a vegetable garden. The maximum list of goods and services a country is expected to provide (when significant for the specific household) to Eurostat comprises the following:

- *withdrawals from stocks (retail trade)*
- *agricultural products (not the seeds, storage and processing, etc. which are considered as intermediate consumption)*
- *own-account production of housing services by owner-occupiers;*
- *domestic and personal services produced by employing paid domestic staff;*

For the purpose of allowing to compare data of the sources HICP and HBS, it is important for Eurostat to be able to identify households' non-monetary own consumption of self-produced products (valued in monetary terms) in the data file it gets from the countries.

*Own-account production of a good or service for own consumption by the household should be **recorded** when the output retained is taken into the household for own final consumption and is to be **valued** at the purchaser's price of similar products sold on the market.*

In the surveys of 1999, the countries applied recording and valuation rules more or less in agreement with the Eurostat recommendation. There was some variation in the selection of households asked for their own account final consumption. Table 13 gives an idea of the country practices concerning the 'goods' part of own account final consumption, i.e. relating to agricultural products and withdrawals from stocks. The country treatment of the 'services' categories c) and d) are dealt with separately below. Countries uniformly chose to record the own account consumption components a) and b) at the moment of consumption. Concerning the valuation rules, the method most frequently used was to record the quantities consumed in the daily diaries of expenditure, and fix their value *post facto*. Certain countries practice the system of self-evaluation by the households themselves. This can make it possible to obtain data of high quality for tradesmen in the retail trade, but can prove harder for farmers and those cultivating a vegetable garden. Instead of valuing at the basic prices, all countries but Belgium and Finland used the purchaser's price in their 1999 surveys.

Table 13: Member State practices in measuring products retained for own final consumption, HBS reference year 1999

	B	DK	D	EL	E	F	IRL	I (11)	L	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK	Recom. Eurostat
Households questioned:																
All households	X	(3)	X	X	(10)	X	X			(6)	X	X	X			X
Farming households														X	X	
Households with a vegetable garden									(5)							
Households in the retail trade														X	(8)	
Evaluation method:																
Evaluation by the household	(1)	X	X	(7)	X		(7)			X		(7)		X	X	X
Average price-quantity (<i>a posteriori</i>)	(2)					X					X	(7)	X			
Evaluation of price																
At basic price																
At producer's price													X			
Purchaser's price	X	X	X	X	X		X			X	X	X		X	X	X
Included at time of:																
Production	X															
Consumption		(4)	X	(4)	(9)		X			X	X	X	X	X	(4)	X

- (1) The goods received in connection with a professional activity (benefits in kind) are price evaluated by the households themselves.
- (2) The rest are evaluated at average price-quantity.
- (3) Own production is included if the amount concerned is more than 1000 DKr and if it is linked to a professional activity.
- (4) The product is registered at the moment of inclusion in the private household irrespective of it is immediately consumed or stocked ('Prinzip der Marktentnahme').
- (5) Only if own production is important.
- (6) Production from own private garden excluded.
- (7) The evaluation by the household is normally done with the help of the interviewer, who should pay attention to the local market price. For certain products where quantities are collected, one could also use an evaluation *a posteriori*.
- (8) Shopkeepers.
- (9) Packed foods and beverages are evaluated at the times when packages are opened. Non nutritional goods are evaluated when they are entered into the household. Services are evaluated when the delivery rights are acquired. Unpacked foods and beverages are evaluated at the consumption times.
- (10) All households in strong collaboration.
- (11) Information not available.

Owner-occupied housing

Principles

In ESA 95, which is the reference for the HBS, the purchase of the dwelling as such is regarded primarily as capital formation (investment) and not consumer expenditure. However, the ownership of a dwelling is considered to produce a service – a shelter – which is actually consumed over time by the households. As a consequence, ESA requires an estimation of the *price* of the shelter, by imputation of a rental, since no monetary transaction is involved. This imputed rental is part of household consumption expenditure. So, for the HBS to be consistent with the ESA principles, it is recommended to exclude the acquisition of dwellings, but to include the consumption of the service of the dwelling.

Besides, the ESA approach is more suited than the other methods when one wishes to make accurate welfare comparisons between households that own their housing and those who rent. The strict investment method would imply, for instance, that a household renting is better off than an

owner-occupier, although both households have the same level of consumption, except that the renting household had to pay the rental, while in reality their welfare is the same. Considering that imputed rentals make up a substantial part of the final consumption expenditure of the owner-occupier (almost 20%, HBS figure, 1999), harmony of concepts and measurement should be given high priority and requires the elaboration of a recommendation.

Major repairs must be separated from minor repairs and treated as gross capital formation and not as consumption expenditure. The guidelines to distinguish between major and minor repairs may be found in ESA 95 3.70 e) and 3.76 c).

Coverage

The dwellings that should be included for imputation of rental in ESA are those used entirely or primarily as residences and any associated structures such as garages. Houseboats, barges, mobile homes and caravans used as principal residences of households should also be included, as are historic monuments identified primarily as dwellings. For secondary dwellings (holiday residences) a separate estimate is recommended. No imputation is to be made for garages used by their private owner only for the purpose of parking near the workplace, which should be classified as a part of transport services. The imputed rent is net of charges for electricity, water, refuse collection etc.

Recommended calculation and valuation rules

The Commission Decision of 18 July 1995 (95/309/EC, Euratom) specifies the principles for estimating dwelling services in the ESA. The HBS is not mentioned in this Decision. Nevertheless, it has already been agreed by the Member States that HBS should estimate imputed rentals for owner-occupiers, preferably using the stratification method. The use of such a method should ensure the coherence between National Accounts and HBS results, and would objectively get more precise results than the self-assessment method.

A selection of the contents of this Decision is reproduced below. Although this Decision states a clear set of basic principles to be applied, enough room for interpretation is left in order to fit the various circumstances of housing stock and housing markets of each Member State. Some important details, such as the actual dwelling features used for stratification purposes, the stratification criteria or the number of strata, should therefore be determined at country level.

Possible features of dwelling to be used for stratification purposes

- size of a dwelling, i.e. area and number of rooms;
- amenities, *i.e.* bathroom, balcony/terrace, central heating, air-conditioning;
- period of construction
- availability of garage, lift, swimming-pool, garden;
- dwelling-type (detached, semi-detached house, flat, vintage);
- location of the dwelling (distance from centre, situated in flat or mountainous land, transport facilities and nearby or far away shops and schools).

Summary of 95/309/EC, Euratom: Commission Decision of 18 July 1995 ¹⁾

Commission Decision of 18 July 1995 specifying the principles for estimating dwelling services for the purpose of implementing Article 1 of Council Directive 89/130/EEC, Euratom on the harmonisation of the compilation of gross national product at market prices (*Official journal NO. L 186 , 05/08/1995 P. 0059 – 0069*).

Article 1: For the purpose of the implementation of Article 1 of Directive 89/130/EEC, Euratom, the following principles for the estimation of dwelling services shall be applied:

- (a) to compile the output of dwelling services Member States shall apply the stratification method based on actual rents;
- (b) Member States shall use tabular analyses or statistical techniques to derive significant stratification criteria;
- (c) the actual rent shall be understood as the rent due for the right to use an unfurnished dwelling;
- (d) to compile imputed rents, actual rents from all contracts shall be exploited relating to privately-owned dwellings;
- (e) in countries where the privately rented sector is small, the corresponding level of rent in the private sector may be obtained either using increased (public) rents or, in justified exceptional cases, employing other objective methods like the user-cost method;
- (f) rents for furnished dwellings may similarly be used to enlarge the basis for imputed rents if scaled down to exclude the payment for the use of the furniture;
- (g) Member States should extrapolate a given base year figure using appropriate quantity, price and quality indicators.

Article 2: For the years 1988 onwards, the estimation of dwelling services, in accordance with the principles set out in the Annex, are to be submitted to the Commission (Eurostat) no later than 30 September 1996.

Article 3: This Decision is addressed to the Member States.

Annex: The following points aim to clarify the principles for the estimation of output, regarding dwelling services.

Principle 1: To compile the output of dwelling services Member States shall apply the stratification method based on actual rents, either by direct extrapolation or by means of econometric regression. In respect of owner-occupied dwellings, this implies the use of actual rents for similar rented dwellings. In the justified and exceptional case where actual rents are missing or statistically unreliable for certain strata, other objective methods, like the user-cost method, may be employed.

Principle 2: For stratification purposes, Member States shall use important features of the dwellings. These may relate to the characteristics of the dwelling and the building, to environmental characteristics of the dwelling or to socio-economic factors. In addition, the use of up-to-date capital values is acceptable for stratification purposes, if these are based on an objective assessment.

Principle 3: Member States shall use tabular analyses or statistical techniques to derive significant stratification criteria. As a minimum, the size, the location and at least one other important feature of a dwelling have to be used. A minimum of 30 cells are to be produced and at least three size classes and two types of location shall be distinguished. The use of fewer or other variables is acceptable, if it has been proved previously that the (multiple) correlation coefficient reaches 70 %.

Principle 4: The actual rent shall be understood as the rent due for the right to use an unfurnished dwelling. If the information source is the tenant, it may therefore be necessary to correct the actual rent observed by adding back any specific rent allowance, which for administrative reasons is paid directly to the landlord. To compile imputed rents, actual rents from all contracts shall be exploited relating to privately-owned dwellings. If necessary for statistical reasons, rents of publicly-owned dwellings may, exceptionally, be used, provided they are increased for any subsidies paid only to public and not to private owners. Similarly, rents from furnished dwellings may be included in the imputation basis after deduction of the rent differential between furnished and unfurnished dwellings.

Principle 8: The actual rent observed in the case of rent-free and cheap dwellings shall be corrected to include the full dwelling service. Neither zero rents nor cheap rents shall be used to calculate imputed rents, on an uncorrected basis.

Principle 13: Garages and parking places provide services to be included in dwelling services if structurally integrated in the dwelling.

1) The full text of this Decision is referenced in Annex VI.

Recommendation for HBS

For the purpose of valuing the **owner-occupied housing services** Eurostat recommends to apply as far as possible the principles settled by ESA 95 and the Commission Decision of 18 July 1995 (95/309/EC, Euratom).

The estimated values are then used to impute the rentals for those households that did not report paying rent (either because they were owner-occupiers or because their housing was rent-free).

In cases where the household just pay a reduced rent and where this is known for the household the countries can – if possible – also impute the value of the reduction in the rent.

If possible, the output of services of **secondary dwellings** (holiday residences) and dwellings occupied by households paying a reduced rental or housed free, should also be valued in accordance with the market value principle. Appropriate corrections are necessary for secondary dwellings located abroad. In case of **time-sharing apartments**, a proportion of the service charge should be recorded as such. The estimated values should be recorded separately from the output of services of main dwellings.

The expenditures on newly built dwellings and dwellings new to the household sector should also be estimated.

To derive significant stratification criteria, the Member States are recommended to use tabular analyses or statistical techniques. As a minimum, the size, the location and at least one other important feature of the dwelling have to be used. It is advised to distinguish at least 30 strata combinations, using three size classes and two types of location in any case. The use of fewer or other variables is of course possible, if the explanatory power of the model is acceptable according to usual statistical criteria. The countries' practices for the 1999 survey (Eurostat reference year) are displayed in Table 15.

If statistically reliable results cannot be obtained because the rental market is very shallow and few houses of the same type or in a particular region are rented, other objective methods may be employed (see Table 14, particularly for Ireland and Spain). In this situation the countries might opt to use not only observations of market rentals of privately-owned dwellings but also rentals of public-owned dwellings, provided these rentals are adjusted for any subsidies paid only to public and not to private housing.

Table 14: Households by occupation status of the dwelling ¹⁾

	Owned	Full rent	Reduced or free rent	TOTAL ²⁾
	%			
B	68,2	29,5	2,2	100
DK	52,8	47,2	0,0 (3)	100
D	41,2	55,1	3,7	100
EL	71,7	20,1	8,2	100
E	81,6	8,5	9,6	100
F	:	:	:	
IRL	82,2	8,9	8,9	100
I	72,0	19,7	8,2	100
L	70,2	24,7	5,1	100
NL	50,8	48,4	0,8	100
A	52,5	41,5	2,3	100
P	:	:	:	
FIN	64,3	35,7	0	100
S	60,5	39,2	0,2	100
UK	67,2	31,3	1,5	100

1) Source: HBS, 1999

2) Including the category 'unspecified'

3) 'Reduced rent' included under 'Full rent'

The market rental is the rental due for the right to use an unfurnished dwelling on the private market, excluding charges for heating, water, electricity etc., including any specific rent allowance. Rentals for furnished dwellings cannot be used directly; they should be scaled down to exclude the payment for the use of the furniture. In case of a rent allowance it is necessary to correct the market rental indicated by the household by adding back the rent allowance, which for administrative reasons is paid directly to the landlord. For a household to be included in the compilation of market rentals, it must have reported paying some rent. If owner-occupier households also report positive values for rent, which could be mortgage payments, co-op dues or the like, they are recommended to be included as well, if the reported rent is sufficiently similar to the mean rent reported by typical rent-paying households. If necessary for statistical reasons, rentals of publicly-owned dwellings may, exceptionally, be used, provided they are increased for any subsidies paid only to public and not to private owners.

Table 15: Estimation methods of imputed rentals by country in 1999 ¹⁾

	Population		Tenants (Reduced and free rental)	Method			Stratification method		
	Owner-occupiers			Self- Assessment	Stratifica- tion	Extrapolation	Size	Location	Other
	Principal dwelling	Secondary dwelling							
B	X	-	Only free rental	X (1)	X (1)	HBS (1)	X (1)	X (1)	X (1)
DK	X	X	(2)		X		X	X	X (3)
D	X	X	X	-	X	HBS		X	X (3)
EL	X	X	Only free rental	X (4)					
E	X	-	X	X					
F	X (5)	-	X		X		X	X	X
IRL	X	-	Only free rental		X		X (6)	X (6)	
I	X	-	-	X					
L	X	-	X	X	X (7)				
NL	X	-	-		X (8)	Estate offices (each 5 years)			
A	X	-	X			Micro- census (March 2000)	X (9)	X	X
P	X	X	X	X (10)					
FIN	X	-	X		X	Statistics on rents (11)	X	X	X
S	X	-	-		X	Statistics on rents (11)	X	X	X
UK	X (12)	-	-	-	X (12)	X (12)	X (12)	X (12)	X (12)

1) Eurostat reference year.

Source: National methodologies

Notes:

- (1) Belgium: Self-assessment method + stratification method for control and imputation of missing. The main stratification variables are number of bedrooms, type of dwelling, garage, and elevator and location (zones urbane, rural, semi-rural). A supplementary control is operated using the "cadastral" income ("revenu cadastral").
- (2) Denmark: Rent is imputed for free rental.
- (3) Germany, Denmark: 'other variable' includes period of construction and installation. In Denmark, some recalculations are made to handle the actual expenses on repairs, taxes etc. The strata used are the same as in the Danish National Accounts.
- (4) Greece: Self-assessment but the interviewer checks and corrects, where necessary, the answer of the interviewee taking into account the locality, mean of actual rent per locality, number of rooms in the dwelling, area of the dwelling, year of construction and the quality of the building/dwelling.
- (5) France: Rents for owners-occupiers are estimated using rents paid by tenants.

- (6) Ireland : Stratification method using location and number of rooms. Data compared with Labour Force Surveys and Consumer Price Index Rent Survey.
- (7) Luxembourg: The households' declarations are checked *a posteriori* by making a calculation per stratification in order to rectify the doubtful statements.
- (8) Netherlands: national method of evaluation. Regression model based on estate offices ('0' and '5' years).
- (9) Austria: stratification method using the variables 'regions (Bundesland)', 'amenities', 'living area in m²' and 'year of construction'. The extrapolation source is the Austrian Microcensus March 2000. The actual rents used include some of the dwelling charges.
- (10) Portugal: Self-assessment with control tables by region during the interview according to the area, number of rooms, sanitary, water and electricity facilities.
- (11) Finland, Sweden: The statistics on rents include some of the dwelling charges.
- (12) United Kingdom: Imputation for owner-occupiers main dwelling is not an official estimate. It is done for Eurostat only. Stratification is carried out with a hedonic model estimated by regression on private market rents. Extrapolation is carried out for larger and more expensive properties with small numbers privately rented in the sample. Stratification variables include: size–number of rooms (not floor area), location–region, property tax band, whether furnished (for estimation, set to unfurnished for imputation), whether house or flat and date of interview (for estimation, set to appropriate date for imputation).

The market rental observed in the case of reduced rental and rent-free dwellings is to be corrected to include the full dwelling service. Neither zero rentals nor subsidised rentals should be used on an uncorrected basis to calculate imputed rentals. Garages and parking places provide services to be included in dwelling services if they may be considered as a structure associated with the dwelling.

Household services produced by employing paid staff

As with housing services by owner-occupiers, household services produced by employing paid staff (servants, cooks, gardeners, chauffeurs, etc.) are considered in ESA as services produced as outputs of unincorporated enterprises owned by households that are retained for consumption by members of the household. The output of these household services is part of final consumption expenditures and has to be valued by the compensation of employees paid; this includes any compensation in kind such as food or accommodation (ESA, 3.68).

4.4.2 LEASING AND HIRE PURCHASES

In addition to purchasing durable goods directly, households can obtain the use of them in the form of **operating leasing**, **financial leasing** and **hire purchase**. In all three cases the institutional unit in question acquires the right to use a durable good, although the good legally remains the property of another unit.

Leasing or hire purchase contracts assume the transfer of a durable good from the one unit ('lessor') to the other (the 'lessee', in the present case the household). The lessor may be identical with, or a subsidiary of, the producer or seller of the durable good, but the lessor may also be a completely independent unit with no ties to the producer or seller. Two types of leasing can be distinguished, *i.e.* operating and financial leasing, additionally to hire purchases:

Operating leasing

The lessee acquires the right to use a durable good for a certain period of time, which may be long or short and not necessarily settled in advance. When the leasing period expires, the lessor expects to receive his good back in more or less the same condition as when he hired it out, apart from normal wear and tear. The lessor is then likely to hire out the good to another lessee or to use it otherwise. Thus, the leasing period does not cover all, or a predominant part of, the good's economic lifetime. Units engaged in operating leasing possess expert knowledge about the kinds of durable goods they hire out. They keep stocks of these goods to be able to hire them out on demand or at short notice. Usually they offer a variety of models to choose from. In order to keep their durable goods in good working order; lessors must carry out maintenance and repair services on goods awaiting hire. Lessors also normally assume responsibility for

repairs and maintenance of a good, as well as replacement in case of a breakdown, while the good is hired out to a lessee.

Operating leasing does not cover situations where the owner of equipment also provides staff to operate the equipment.

Financial leasing

The lessee acquires the right to use a durable good in exchange for rental payments over a predetermined and protracted term. If all risks and rewards of ownership are, *de facto* though not *de jure*, transferred from lessor to lessee, the lease is a financial one. In financial leasing, the leasing period covers all, or most of, the economic lifetime of the durable good. At the end of the leasing period the lessee often has the option to buy the good at a nominal price. The lessor does not need to possess any expertise about the good in question. He offers no repair, maintenance or replacement services to the lessee. Normally, the good is chosen by the lessee and delivered directly to him by the producer or seller. The lessor's role is thus purely financial.

Hire purchases

A durable good is sold to a purchaser in return for agreed future payments. The buyer takes possession of the good immediately, though in law it remains the property of the seller or financier as collateral/guarantee until all agreed payments have been made. Hire purchase is usually restricted to consumer durable goods, and most purchasers are households. Financiers of hire purchase contracts typically are separate institutional units operating in close co-operation with sellers of durable goods.

Recording and valuation

Recording and valuation of leasing and hire purchases is in line with the 'acquisition' principle in the concept of actual consumption. Under financial leasing and hire purchase contracts, ESA requires the durable good to be recorded as if bought by the purchaser the day he takes possession of it at the price the purchaser would have paid in a cash transaction. The lessee becomes the *de facto* owner from the beginning of the leasing period. Under an operating lease construction, the lessor remains the owner. Consequently, the rental payments during the leasing period are part of the household's final consumption expenditure. If the durable concerned is for instance a car, the expenditure should be registered as a service under COICOP category 07.2.4.1. A car hired together with a driver is not considered as a leasing construction in ESA. In this case, the service should be recorded as a service under heading 7.3.2 of COICOP.

If the lessee does not buy the durable under a financial leasing construction at the end of the leasing period, the ownership of the durable reverts to the lessor and ESA 3.150d rule applies. This rule says that negative final consumption expenditure should be recorded, equalling the nominal price offered by the lessor at the end of the contract period. The transaction in these so-called existing goods should be recorded at the time ownership changes.

4.4.3 TRANSACTIONS IN EXISTING GOODS

Most consumer durable goods, such as a second hand car, require specific treatment to be re-used for final consumption. In ESA 95, the transfer of existing goods is recorded at the time ownership changes as a negative expenditure for the seller and a positive expenditure for the purchaser (ESA 95, 3.149). In the case where ownership of an existing good is transferred from a household to an enterprise, negative final consumption expenditure should be recorded for the household. If ownership of an existing good is transferred from an enterprise, positive consumption expenditure is recorded for the household. Inter-household transactions are recorded as negative expenditure for the selling household, and positive expenditure for the buyer. Because of the sample character of the HBS, the registration in the case of these inter-household transactions is normally only for one household involved in the transaction and not for the other. For the estimators of expenditures by household characteristics, however, this need not create a bias if receiving and selling households

are equally represented in the sample, with the households in the sample having similar characteristics as the 'missing' households.

It should be noted that *valuables*, as they are called in ESA, are not to be considered as a consumer good, and consequently require no registration when they are transacted. Valuables are non-financial goods that are not used primarily for consumption (or production) do not deteriorate (physically) over time under normal conditions, and are acquired and held primarily as stores of value. Examples are diamonds, non-monetary gold, platinum, silver, paintings, sculptures, jewellery fashioned out of precious stones and metals and collectors items.

4.4.4 HEALTH AND EDUCATION CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURES

The fields of health and education are certainly those where the comparability of Household Budget surveys' data is the worst. Because household consumption in these fields is mainly paid by government, a household survey is not the right instrument to collect information on actual use. Other fields such transport, recreation and culture are also partly financed by the government, though to a much lesser extent, so that comparability is probably only marginally affected. It is essential to improve comparability of consumption expenditures in the HBS on the domains of health and education. HICP uses the net expenditure approach (Council Regulation (EC) No 2166/1999 of 8/10/1999).

Health

The predominantly public health care systems¹¹ are financed in different ways in the EU Member States. Roughly, two types of public scheme can be identified. One is almost entirely financed through taxation; the other through social premiums. Under a taxation regime, health care is mainly provided, free, by government units directly to the households. In a system based on social premium payments, people going, for instance, to a hospital or doctor pay the medical bill and are then reimbursed by the government units. Table 16 shows for the Member States the part of government health expenditures that is directly provided to the households ('taxation regime') and the part that is reimbursed ('social premium regime'). Apart from the typical direct provision systems in Denmark, Sweden and the UK, or the typical reimbursement system in Belgium, there are mixed systems. In France and the Netherlands, for instance, both the household and the government unit pay part of the bill to the provider of the medical service.

¹¹ In 1999 about 80% of household actual consumption expenditures on health may be attributed to the 'public' part or government units.

Table 16: Government health expenditures, ESSPROS, 1998 ¹⁾

	Direct provision	Reimbursements	Total
	%		
B	1	99	100
DK	100	0	100
D	91	9	100
EL	70	30	100
E	99	1	100
F	41	59	100
IRL	94	6	100
I	100	0	100
L	-	-	-
NL	100	0	100
A	100	0	100
P	95	5	100
FIN	80	20	100
S	100	0	100
UK	100	0	100

1) Source: Social protection expenditure (Eurostat, 1998) ESSPROS: European System of Integrated Social Protection

Due to the different EU health care systems, health expenditures recorded by the households in the HBS will very much depend on the system. In typical 'direct provision' systems such as in the UK and Sweden, the recorded health expenditures are relatively low. In typical 'reimbursement' systems they may be high, if the household does not (or cannot) correct for the reimbursements which are effective at a later date than the payment of the medical bill. In any case, comparability of health expenditures recorded by households between countries is inadequate in the HBS. Even if households in every 'reimbursement' system in an EU Member State were to correct their health expenditures for reimbursements, the comparability issue is not solved, although differences with the 'direct provision' systems are levelled out. This way of recording has been advocated by Eurostat in the absence of a substantial solution to the comparability issue. Measuring *actual use*, as a means to obtain comparability, should therefore not rely on households but on public sources. Table 17 shows how health expenditures are recorded in the 1999 wave.

Table 17: Recording of health expenditure per country

	B	DK	D	EL	E	F	IRL	I	L	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK	Recom. Eurostat
Concept selected actual final consumption (using modelling) (yes/no)		X (1)									X					X (3)
Recording principle Household's net expenditure (after deduction of Social Security and private insurance reimbursements)	X			X	X		X (2)	X	X	X	X		X	X		X
Household's gross expenditure (before Social Security and private insurance reimbursements)	X	X	X			X	X (2)					X	X		X	X

- (1) Calculated and published separately (not as part of 'ordinary' consumption)
(2) It is possible to calculate both concepts (net and gross)
(3) Imputed health expenditure for unofficial publication

Education

The comparability problem for education expenditures in the HBS is even more pronounced than for health expenditures, since an even bigger part is public. As with health, households are not the right source to obtain information on actual use.

Improving comparability in the field of health and education

Eurostat organised an Expert Group Meeting¹² to investigate possible ways to improve the comparability of household health and education expenditures in the HBS. For this purpose Eurostat supported the use of non-HBS sources to impute health and education expenditures at household level. Non-HBS sources available on education expenditures are ESA 95 and the common UNESCO-OECD-EUROSTAT (UOE) data. The UOE data contain public sector expenditure information by educational level, and are collected directly from the providers of the services. Taking full advantage of both sources, the imputation method would use ESA 95 to provide the totals on actual use, and the UNESCO-OECD-EUROSTAT data for distribution purposes to the households in the HBS, using age to link the expenditures from the UOE to the HBS households. As more data become available, a similar procedure could be developed for health. This was essentially Eurostat's proposal in the Expert Group Meeting. In any case, comparability would be improved by replacing the expenditures in the HBS collected from the households by the imputed values. At the same time, because of the modelling assumptions implicitly used in deriving the imputed values, publication would need careful consideration.

Another way to distribute National Accounts totals to HBS households is to use qualitative information in the HBS on, for instance, the number of doctors' visits in the HBS. This method is practised by some Member States; however, the imputed expenditures are not included in the national official publications from HBS.

Table 18 presents the views of the Member States represented in the Expert Group on imputing HBS health and education expenditures. Most countries accept the concept of actual use registration in the HBS health and education, and consider the allocation of expenditure data to the households in the HBS from non-HBS sources as a possibility. However, most Member States in the Expert Group do not want to rely automatically on the National Accounts as the source for actual use totals; further analysis of what is exactly included in the National Accounts is regarded as necessary. All countries said that they could accept an unofficial publication including imputed health and education expenditures. Germany, which did not participate in the Expert Group, gave its view on the matter afterwards and was firmly opposed to the possibility of registering health and education expenditures within the scope of the HBS, but did not oppose the release of another unofficial publication.

¹² Luxembourg, 13 December 2000.

Table 18: Views on full-use registration of health and education expenditures within the scope of the HBS

	<i>Principle</i>	<i>Method</i>		<i>Publication</i>	
	Considers HBS as a potential means to show household's total usage of products (i.e. after imputing governments transfers to the households) by background variables	Considers the National Accounts (NA) government transfers the reference sum for the HBS	Considers the allocation of data from external sources to the HBS households possible	Has data in the HBS about doctor's visits etc. which can be used for allocation of government transfers to the HBS households	Thinks separate publishing on total usage from the HBS after allocation of government transfers to the households in the HBS is possible
DK	Yes	No	Yes, cost information to be combined with quantitative information from the HBS	Yes	Yes, but as a supplement to the HBS consumption figures
D	No. Not valuable due to principles of German health and education system	No. Not applicable	No. Not applicable	No. Not valuable due to principles of German health and education system	No
ES	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes, but independently of the official HBS data
IRL	Yes	No, until analysis of NA details proves opposite	Yes, in case of health: cost information to be combined with information from HBS	Yes	Yes, but independently from official HBS figures
A	No, regards HBS as just one source to get the overall picture	Not applicable: outside scope of HBS	Not applicable: outside scope of HBS	No	No, but prepared to accept an unofficial figure
P	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
FIN	Yes	No, until further analysis of NA details	Yes	Yes	Yes, but independently from official HBS figures
UK	Yes	No, until further analysis of NA details	Yes	No	Yes, but independently from official HBS figures

1) The views expressed are those from the countries which took part in an Expert Group Meeting on health and education expenditures in the HBS in December 2000 in Luxembourg plus Germany.

Recommendation for HBS

Taking into account the views of the Expert Group, Eurostat recommends the Member States to continue their efforts in the development of the concept of actual use for health and education services. However, this concept will not be included in the conceptual base of household consumption expenditure of HBS until this goal has been achieved in a satisfactory way.

For the fields 'transport', 'recreation' and 'culture' Eurostat does not regard it appropriate at the moment to develop the model to measure actual use. Specialised studies can, however, be undertaken to show the significance of adapting the HBS data in these areas for the purpose of consumption measurement.

4.4.5 OTHER ITEMS

Individual benefits (or expenditures) in kind

Individual benefits in kind can be distinguished into wages and salaries in kind and social transfers in kind.

Wages and salaries in kind consist of good and services, or other benefits, provided free or at reduced prices by employers, that can be used by employees in their own time and at their own discretion, for the satisfaction of their own needs or wants or those of other members of their households. Those goods and services, or other benefits are not necessary for employers' production process. For the employees, those wages and salaries in kind represent an additional income: they would have paid a market price if they had bought these goods or services by themselves. (ESA 95, 4.04)

Social transfers in kind consist of individual goods and services provided as transfers in kind to individual households by government units and NPISH, whether purchased on the market or produced as non-market output by government units or NPISH. They may be financed out of taxation, other government income or social security contributions, or out of donations and property income in the case of NPISH. (ESA 95, 4.104)

Services for collective consumption ('collective services') are provided simultaneously to all members of the community or all members of a particular sections of the community, such as all households living in a particular region. (ESA 95, 3.83)

All household final consumption expenditure is individual. By convention, all goods and services provided by NPISH are treated as individual. (ESA 95, 3.84)

Collective good and services will accordingly not be taken into account.

ESA requires individual benefits in kind to be valued at basic prices when produced by the employer and at purchasers' prices of the employer when bought in by the employer.

Most common salaries and wages in kind

- the use of vehicles or other durable goods provided for the personal use of employees, and/or free fuel;
- benefit from free or reduced cost provision of housing or accommodation services;
- benefit from free or reduced cost supply of gas, electricity, water and telephone;
- other benefits such as:
 - benefits accruing to the employees of transport companies when they are granted reduced fares;
 - purchase of a vehicle below market price (for the employees of vehicle manufacturers);
 - free meals and drinks obtained in exchange for work;
 - uniforms or other forms of special clothing which employees choose to wear frequently outside of the workplace as well as at work;
 - transport to and from work, except when organised in the employer's time, car parking;
 - crèches paid for by the employer for the children of the personnel;
 - the provision of sports, recreation or holidays facilities for employees and their families;
 - remuneration in kind may also include the value of interest foregone by employers when they provide loans to employees at reduced, or even zero, rates of interest.

The main conceptual difficulty in including benefits in kind is that the benefit received may not be clear to people because they are not able to influence directly the way in which part their 'expenditure' is spent. They may even feel that they do not receive any benefit from it. Measurement and valuation may also cause considerable difficulties: imputations have to be made and the greater the extent of the imputation, the higher the risk of creating statistical artefacts. This is particularly true for services. For the goods part, the household will usually have objective information of the market value of the product or of a similar product. For some goods even a bill

has to be paid in advance with the money being reimbursed later on, so that the household can do the recording. In other cases where it is believed that no objective information is available to the household or requires calculation, filter questions can be used to identify the existence of a benefit. The imputation should then preferably be done by the NSI. The practices within the Member States for their 1999 surveys are displayed in the following table.

Table 19: Salaries and wages in kind

	B	DK	D	EL	E	F	IRL	I	L	NL	A	P	FIN	S	UK	Eurostat recomm.
Which benefits are evaluated	(1)	(14)	(2)	(3)	(5)					(10)	(10)			(14)	(15)	
Free or reduced cost housing	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X		X (16)	X
Company car (for private use)	X	X	X		(6)	X	X			X	X (11)		X		X (17)	X
Gas, electricity or water	X		X	X	X (7)	X	X			X	X		X			X
Telephone	X	X	X	X	X (7)	X	X			X	X					X
Other	X	X (13)	X (13)	X (4)	X (8)		X (9)			X	X	X (12)	X (13)		X	X

- (1) All the private benefits declared by the household are registered.
- (2) Benefits in kind are evaluated using estimated retail prices.
- (3) Benefits in kind are measured and evaluated at retail prices.
- (4) Services or goods paid by other households or the State. There are recorded the goods and services (in kind) received for free by the households from: The agricultural or livestock production of other households, from other households' stores offered as «gift», rent for main or secondary residence for accommodation provided free from rent or having being paid by third households, electricity, water supply, telephone bills paid also by third households, etc. The State, Municipals, Greek Church authorities, insurance organisations, etc. as benefits in kind, e.g. foodstuffs to people having more than 3 children, toys offered by municipalities, clothing offered by the church, etc.
- (5) Self-evaluation by the household.
- (6) Information about this service is collected but not priced.
- (7) Information is collected when the household is aware of the estimated value of the service.
- (8) Free or reduced price lunches and dinners at the job place, as well as other good or services received from the employer for free or for a reduced price.
- (9) Other benefits from the employer are: health insurance, life assurance, payment of education fees for children, membership cards for clubs, free meals, food and petrol.
- (10) All benefits in kind specified by the households are evaluated.
- (11) Evaluated at the tax basis.
- (12) Food, transport tickets and all other goods given.
- (13) Meals paid by the employer and some minor items.
- (14) Benefits in kind are evaluated in case they are taxable and hence obtainable from administrative registers.
- (15) The value of benefits in kind is estimated by some users for analysis of the effect of taxes and state benefits on the distribution of income, but is not included in survey outputs.
- (16) Whether rent-free from employer.
- (17) Whether has continuous use of a car provided by the employer.

For the special case of an **employer-provided car**, the ESA rule of registering consumer durable goods partly used for the enterprise and partly by the members of the households for final consumption applies, that is the value recorded should reflect the proportion of the use that is attributable to the household. This requires information on the number of kilometres and fuel consumption during the year.

Housing and accommodation falls within the category of rent-free dwellings (see previous section) and should be treated in the same way as that proposed for owner-occupiers' imputed rents.

The benefit from **free supply of gas, electricity, telephone**, etc, can be valued in various ways. The choice will largely be guided by feasibility criteria specific to each Member State. Among the

possible methods, the use of quantities (e.g. kWh consumed) can allow a fairly precise estimate but runs up against the problem of the measurement of the quantity (very often not known by the household). It is also possible to base the calculation on a stratification of the households which do not have the benefit concerned (i.e. almost all households) followed by a calculation of an average amount for the various cases identified. For example, for electricity consumption, the relevant criteria of stratification could be the size of the house or the household.

Individual **health and education services** provided by government bodies and NPISH have been dealt with specifically in previous sections.

Conversely to the HBS criteria of including all the individual benefits in kind, HICP require to exclude them. Therefore, it would be advisable to separate the monetary and the non-monetary parts of this type of consumption expenditure.

Recommendation for HBS

*Eurostat recommends including the **individual benefits in kind** supplied to households in the form of goods or services by employers, government bodies or NPISH for free or at a reduced rate, to the extent that they are believed to be quantitatively significant to the household.*

***Collective services** provided by government bodies and NPISH to the community as a whole, or large sections of the community, will not be taken into account.*

In both cases it ought to be possible to identify the non-monetary part of these consumption expenditures.

Life insurance

The premiums paid under a life assurance and capitalisation contract are treated by ESA 95 as a form of savings¹³ and in this connection are excluded from the field of consumption expenditure. From a theoretical point of view the treatment in national accounts is slightly different since although the 'savings' component is indeed excluded from the consumption expenditure, the overheads of the insurer are taken into account. However, due to the practical difficulties to make this distinction by the households, we recommend to exclude totally these premiums for the HBS purposes.

¹³ For the purposes of national accounts, savings represent that part of disposable income which is not spent as final consumption of goods and services

CHAPTER 5 MAIN UNITS AND VARIABLES: THE HARMONISATION PROGRAMME

5.1 CONTEXT

Harmonisation of the classifications and coding system of essential variables is fundamental for a comparative analysis of the Household Budget surveys at European Union level. Moreover, such a harmonisation, with the definitions of consumption expenditure and income, is an essential precondition in the procedures initiated by Eurostat.

The advantages of such a harmonisation of the surveys are undeniable:

- Such a harmonisation would make it possible to improve the reliability of data as well as the speed of access to it, in particular for studies requiring access to individual information or for the production of Eurostat's comparative tables.
- For the Member States, the use of internationally recognised classifications (particularly COICOP-HBS) can only have positive consequences. This does not confine the Member States to following a rigid structure since the possibility of having additional, more detailed levels, remains open.
- In addition, management of the Community database by Eurostat would be facilitated, since it would eliminate re-codification of national data in Community format, which is lengthy and requires the development of conversion tables which are not always very satisfactory in terms of quality (see Figure 2 at the end of Chapter 3).

Among the variables whose harmonisation to the Community format is important, those on activity, income, the structure of the household and, obviously, consumption have priority.

The NSIs are invited at least to maximise flexibility of use code microdata and maintain files at the lowest possible level of the appropriate classification to permit conversion to the European standard. Aggregation at a higher level may be required to satisfy constraints of confidentiality or data reliability. Wherever possible countries are advised to use a collapsing strategy for these aggregations and define them in terms of classes or higher level aggregations of the standard and to use classifications that reflect both the most detailed and collapsed levels.

This chapter presents the main units and variables. The complete list of variables and units is given in Annex 2.

5.2 COICOP-HBS 1999

The basic harmonised nomenclature used to breakdown the consumption expenditure is COICOP-HBS 1999. This classification is derived from the OECD COICOP of 1993. COICOP-HBS 1999 is identical to the OECD COICOP up to the third level of detail (4 digits) but provides an additional level of detail extending the codes up to 5 digits.

The full description of this nomenclature is given in Annex 3.

COICOP-HBS 1999 is being revised during 2002 by an expert Task Force in order to solve a certain number of problems and difficulties of application already detected. It is consequently expected that

an improved version of this nomenclature will be proposed before the next round of HBS. The problems detected refer mainly to the classification of some borderline cases (which will be solved with additional comments for the categories involved) and the lack of suitable categories for some items (which will be solved by the addition of a few new categories).

5.3 MAIN VARIABLES

It is possible to analyse most of the information in the Household Budget surveys by organising the data at micro level according to two types of record. Accordingly, the harmonised database managed by Eurostat is structured in two file types (see Figure 2 at the end of Chapter 3):

- the member file (variables starting with M);
- the household file (variables starting with H).

The HBS uses two kinds of variables.

“Basic” variables are provided directly by the country concerned. Re-coding may be a simple assignation, or a more complex calculation. “Derived” variables, on the other hand, are calculated from these.

Insofar as all the basic variables are indicated by the Member States at the time of the transmission of the micro-data to Eurostat, the derived variables can be calculated by Eurostat. On the other hand, if data are missing, calculation of these derived variables becomes a problem. This is why Eurostat suggests that Member States incorporate in their surveys the necessary modifications in order to be able to transfer the basic variables.

The list shown in this document has been considerably reduced in comparison with the variable lists proposed for the 1988 and 1994 survey rounds. On the other hand, a few new variables have been introduced.

For convenience, the variables describing the reference person are integrated with the basic variables, although it is in theory possible to determine them in Eurostat if data on individual income are available (see Chapter 4 for the definition of the reference person).

Important member and household variables that are required are listed below. This list should allow us to speed up the processing of national micro-data by simplifying re-coding. The complete variable list is given in Annex 2.

5.3.1 MAIN BASIC VARIABLES

This list only gives the variable codes and names. For fuller explanations of the variable contents, please refer to Annex 2.

1. Households

a. Expenditure

The HBS methodology uses the four-level COICOP-HBS nomenclature, which provides the twelve following main divisions of consumption expenditure:

- HE01. Food and non-alcoholic beverages
- HE02. Alcoholic beverages, tobacco and narcotics
- HE03. Clothing and footwear
- HE04. Housing, water, electricity, gas and other fuels
- HE05. Furnishings, household equipment and routine household maintenance
- HE06. Health
- HE07. Transport
- HE08. Communication
- HE09. Recreation and culture
- HE10. Education
- HE11. Restaurants and hotels
- HE12. Miscellaneous goods and services

These variables are indispensable. They lie at the heart of household budgets. HBSs focus on consumption expenditure and must provide high-quality information on this subject. Eurostat must assign national variables to Community variables as precisely as possible, while at the same time standardising as much as possible the aggregation of data, which allows Eurostat to construct the upper levels of each function.

The following situation would be ideal: the country provides monetary and non-monetary expenditure separately. The two expenditures would be aggregated by Eurostat.

There are several possible situations:

The country has done the recoding, without aggregating the data: Eurostat requests the conversion table for national and Eurostat variables in order to know and understand the conversion rules followed by the country. This situation is apt to provide good results since the country controls its own nomenclature and can precisely assign its national variables to the proper COICOP-HBS headings. Applying the standard aggregation rules will guarantee good comparability.

The country has done the recoding and aggregated the data: it is also useful to receive a precise conversion key for information purposes. In this situation we can aggregate the data again, according to our standardised rules, and thus compare the country's upper levels with our own. This procedure may reveal errors or methodological differences, since validity tests are most reliable when done on aggregated data.

The country has done the recoding and aggregated the data, but Eurostat has only received some of the levels: this situation is unsatisfactory as it causes problems when comparing countries. If this arises, we ask the country for further information and whether they will be able to complete the work.

The country has not done the recoding: in this situation Eurostat does the recoding itself. The only requirement is that we have received documentation that is as precise as possible, so that any ambiguity concerning certain product classifications might be solved quickly and accurately.

b. Income

Since HBS are not intended to focus on income, only the main income variables are indispensable:

HH09.9: Total income from all sources (net amount)

HI11. Main source of income

However, in order to improve the available information, having all the other variables connected with income is very convenient.

Eurostat is aware that the quality of income data is not always perfect and varies enormously from country to country. Calculating a harmonised net income is extremely complex and requires close attention. The most common usage is to create classifications based on income (quartile, decile).

The difficulties are the same as for expenditure. If the country has not done the recoding, Eurostat requires as much information as possible in order to determine income as best we can and recode it as accurately as possible.

The quality and comparability checks that can be done on such variables are limited to checking their consistency with previous years, and occasionally verifying that they appear realistic compared to other countries.

c. Other variables

Variables about the survey:

HA02: year of survey

HA04: household identifier

HA08: region (NUTS 1)

HA09: population density (also used by the LFS)

HA10: weighting

Characteristics of the reference person:

HC03: sex

HC04: age

HC05: marital status

Education:

HC08: level of studies completed

Activity:

HC12: current activity

HC16: usual activity

HC18: profession

HC21: employment status

HC22: sector of individuals

The current activity is most often provided, but we believe the usual activity (last 12 months) should be emphasised.

Housing:

HD01: occupancy status

HD03: type of housing

HD06: number of rooms

HD07: floor space

HD1006: telephone

HD1007: garage

HD1008: secondary residence

Capital goods:

HD1401: automobile

HD1402: number of automobiles

HD1404: number of televisions

HD1407: video equipment

HD1408: computer

HD1409: washing machine

HD1411: dishwasher

The refrigerator variable is considered less important as the rate is close to 100% in all of the countries.

2. Members

As stated in the introduction, member variables are not mainly used by themselves. The vast majority of the tables we produce and of the requests we receive concern households. Nonetheless, member variables are essential for calculating derived variables.

a. Income

MF099: total net income

The other components of income are generally haphazardly provided. Total net income is important in order to determine the reference person, and is the only data item that Eurostat absolutely requires.

b. Other variables

Variables about the survey:

MA02: year of survey

MA04: household identifier

MA05: reference person's line number

MA10: weight

Characteristics of members:

MB02: sex

MB03: age

MB04: marital status of individuals

MB05: kinship

Education:

MC02: level of studies underway

MC03: level of studies completed

As for the household education variables, compatibility with the ISCED-76 nomenclature is indispensable. We are maintaining the concept of studies underway because a large number of members are schoolchildren or students.

Activity:

ME01: current activity

ME07: usual activity

ME09: profession

ME12: employment status

ME13: sector household members

5.3.2 MAIN DERIVED VARIABLES

Eurostat calculates and determines derived variables from the so-called "primary" variables, which we have recoded according to our nomenclature. Some of these variables are calculated for households, others for individual members. There are two kinds of derived variables: those used unchanged for classification or cross-tabulation for analytical purposes, and those which are mainly used to determine other secondary variables. Most derived variables (members and households) are determined from the information on members. For this reason, recoding work is always begun by creating a coherent member file, which will be used to create the household file.

If the country prefers to calculate them itself, it provides all the primary information described above, as well as the derived variables. Eurostat also requires the country to provide the algorithms it used.

If the country cannot do the calculations itself, Eurostat will ask the country to supply all the information needed to properly determine all the derived variables. Derived variables are then calculated by Eurostat according to a standard procedure.

Again, this list only gives the variable codes and names. For more complete explanations of the variable contents, please refer to Annex 2.

1. Household

HB05: household size

HB06.1: equivalent size (OECD scale)

HB06.2: equivalent size (modified OECD scale)

HB02.1: children up to 13 years

HB02.2: children aged 14 to 16

HB02.3: 'older' children

HB02.4: 'adult' children

HB02.5: adults not living in union

HB02.6: adults living in union

All of these variables are calculated by tallying MB09.1 "Categorisation of the household members (1)", which is itself a fundamental derived variable, since it allows the members of the household to be classified.

HB027: children up to 18 years (inclusive)

HB028: 'adult' children

HB029: adults not living in union

HB0210: adults living in union

All of these variables are calculated by tallying MB09.2 "Categorisation of the household members (2)".

HB07.1: type of household (1)

HB07.2: type of household (2)

HB07.3: household type (abbreviated)

HC23: socio-economic category of the reference person

HC24: socio-economic category situation of the reference person (aggregated classification)

HD15: economic situation (active occupied)

HD16: number of members active occupied (abbreviated classification)

HD17: number of member active occupied (detailed classification)

Expenditure:

HF13: total consumption expenditure; survey year prices (national currency)

HF14.1: total consumption expenditure; reference year prices (national currency)

HF14.2: total consumption expenditure for the reference year prices (euros)

HF143: total consumption expenditure for the reference year prices (in purchasing power standards expressed in euros)

2. Members

MB091: classification of members of household

Using variables MB03, MC02, MC01, MB04, MB05 for determining the difference between an older child and an adult child. If information is not provided, we will proceed on a case-by-case basis for each country according to what information is available.

MB092: aggregated classification of members of household

ME14: socio-economic category of individuals

ME15: aggregated socio-economic category of individuals

CHAPTER 6 SAMPLE DESIGN

This chapter describes the main sampling characteristics of Household Budget surveys in the Community. From the perspective of comparability it is by no means necessary for the national sample designs to be similar, or even comparable. Rather, the requirement is that in each survey, the design is determined by specific national circumstances, constraints and survey objectives. Any sample should, nevertheless, meet the basic requirements of representative or probability sampling both in design and in implementation, and should be of a sufficient size to permit the type of tabulation and analysis envisaged for the survey. These requirements are met to varying degrees in the national Household Budget surveys.

Table 20 provides an overview of the principal sampling characteristics, such as sample design and allocation, sample structure, and response rates achieved. The individual survey profiles may be consulted for further description (see Annex 1).

This and the next sections discuss various features of sample design and implementation from a comparative perspective, covering aspects such as survey coverage, sample size and allocation and sampling stages. Some remarks are made on the extent to which the samples, as designed and implemented, meet the basic requirements of probability sampling. Finally, the chapter deals with the sampling unit, the sample frame, response rates and substitution.

6.1. COVERAGE

All Household Budget surveys are confined to the population residing in *private households*. Collective or institutional households (old persons' homes, hospitals, hostels, boarding houses, prisons, military barracks etc.) are excluded, as are generally persons without a fixed place of residence. In most cases the population excluded in this way amounts to no more than 2% of the total population, though the effect is more significant for particular groups such as old persons, and certainly the homeless.

As to geographical coverage, most Household Budget surveys cover the entire population residing in private households in the national territory. For reasons of cost and practicality, some remote areas with very small populations may be excluded without noticeably affecting the results of the surveys, such as certain Scottish areas in the case of the UK. Occasionally some more important groups have also been excluded, such as households without permanent residence in Italy, or households in Sweden where the person selected at the sample selection stage is more than 74 years of age. In Germany the new Länder have been included, and so have households where the residents do not have German citizenship. Households with a net monthly income of more than DM 35,000 are sampled but excluded in the data processing, weighting and publication.

6.2. SAMPLE SIZE

For the Eurostat reference year of 1999, the range of sample sizes for Household Budget surveys varies from around 1,851 in the Netherlands, 2,727 in Denmark, 3,031 in Sweden and 3,745 in Belgium, to 20,930 in Italy and more than 62,000 in Germany. Though the magnitude of the sampling error depends mainly on the size of the sample, for various practical and substantive

reasons the size of the sample also has some relationship to the size of the country, though the relationship is far from uniform (see variations in sampling rates below). Five of the smaller countries (Netherlands, Denmark, Belgium, Luxembourg and Sweden) use relatively small samples of size 2,000-3,000 completed households, whereas the other countries use very different sample sizes.

Table 20: Main sampling characteristics and response rates

1994 round	Achieved net sample (n)	Equivalent n over 1 year	Response rate (R%)	R% after substitution	Survey population: main exclusions	Over-sampling of special domains	Sampling frame	Number of stages	Probability sampling	Ultimate sampling unit
	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)
B	3,745	3,745	10%	NS		Brussels (a)	National population register	2	X	Household
DK	2,727	2,727	62%	NS	Greenland and Faroe Islands		Central Population register	1	(XX) (c)	Address
D	62,150	62,150	(d)	NS	(e)		Microcensus 1997 and 1998	1	-	Household
GR	6,258		68%	98%			Census of Population 1991	2	XX	Dwelling
E	9,891	9,891	65%	n.a.			1991 Population Census with the inclusion of new dwellings	2	XX	Dwelling
F	25,000	25,000	62%	NS			1990 Census updated by new constructions	2	XX	Dwelling
IRL	7,644	7,645	55%	n.a.	households with more than three lodgers	Oversampling of agricultural households	Census of population enumeration areas	2	XX	Household
I	20,930	20,931	79%	n.a.			Population register (on commune basis)	2	XX	Household
L	3,012	3,012	50%	NS			Central Population register	NS	X	Household
NL	1,851	1,851	77%	NS			Geographic Base Register, self-employed from the General Business Register	2	X	Address
A	7,098	7,098	25%	n.a.			Autrian microcensus 1994 and 1995 (new building/dwellings were added)	2	XX	Dwelling
P	9,643	9,644	73%	n.a.			Master sample based on 1991 Population Census	1	XX	Dwelling
FIN	4,359	4,360	63%	NS		Sparsely populated regions	Central Population register	2	XX	Individual
S	3,031	3,032	53%	NS	Individuals of more than 74 years of age (h)		Population Register	1	XX	Individual
UK	7,100	7,101	63%	NS			Postcode Address File	2 (NS in N. Ireland)	X	Household (i)

Explanatory notes columns:

- (1) Households finally completed, along with diaries and all interviews.
- (2) Comparable sample sizes over 1 year.
- (3) Completed households, as % of the number originally selected plus substitutes if any.
- (4) Completed households originally selected plus substitutions if any.
- (5) National areas or categories of households not included in the survey.
- (6) Population groups for which higher sampling rates and/or special procedures are used.
- (7) The main source(s) for sample selection.
- (8) Number of stages in which the sample is selected.
- (9) Indicates departures from probability sampling. XX: probability sampling. X: Sample selected randomly but low response rates indicate possible departures from representativity of sample. -: No probability sampling. (XX) for DK: the sample is concretely decided upon taken into account the place of residence of the interviewer.
- (10) The unit selected at the last stage of the sampling procedure.

6.3. SAMPLING

By probability sampling is meant a sampling scheme in which each and every unit in the study population is given a known, non-zero chance of selection into the sample. Probability sampling requires that (i) all units in the population be represented in the frame used for selecting the sample; (ii) the selections are done by applying a proper randomised procedure which gives definite selection probabilities to all eligible units; and (iii) the sample as selected is successfully enumerated in the survey.

Probability sampling is used in the large majority of surveys in the Community, only Germany has a sampling scheme based on quota sampling (see below). Belgium has a very high non-response rate which reduces the representativeness of the achieved sample.

It is unfortunately the case that departures from proper sampling procedures are tolerated rather readily in the case of Household Budget surveys. The problems of non-probability selection and of

high non-response are related. The failure to achieve acceptable response rates often leads to the adoption of procedures (such as quota sampling, or more or less indiscriminate substitutions) which depart from probability sampling. Such procedures are adopted in an attempt to achieve an acceptable representation of the population in the sample, despite high non-response rates.

In the case of the German Household Budget Survey it is worth noting that though the sample is formally described as 'quota sample', the procedure used is actually a modified and improved version of the conventional quota sample.

Germany: *A modified quota sampling procedure*

In a conventional quota sample, the design specifies the number of sample cases required within each quota category defined in terms of certain characteristic(s) of the respondents; as to which particular units are enumerated in the survey is not specified but is left to the interviewer. One of the practical problems in quota samples, as used for example in most market and opinion research surveys, is the difficulty faced by interviewers in finding respondents with appropriate characteristics to fill the specified quotas. This often requires that the characteristics defining the quotas are easily identifiable by the interviewer, and that only coarsely defined quotas are used. In the modified 'quota' scheme used in the German Household Budget Survey, the sample is obtained in four steps:

- (a) the identification of households from preceding surveys who are willing to participate in the new survey in principle;*
- (b) allocation of the above to the sample, in accordance with the quota requirements based on specific important characteristics available from the Microcensus and taking into account the expected completion rates. The characteristics chosen are a detailed classification by region (Bundeslaender), the monthly household net-income class, the socio-economic status of the head of household and household type;*
- (c) follow-up by the interviewers of the particular addresses allocated or "selected" for the survey in this way;*
- (d) remaining units are recruited by comprehensive advertisement.*

6.4. SAMPLE ALLOCATION

This refers to the distribution of the sample across different population groups or regions etc. of the country. In most cases the entire population is sampled uniformly and the sample is distributed proportionately across different areas and population groups in the country. However, in some surveys, population groups of special interest are over-sampled, such as farmers in Ireland. In Italy and Finland sparsely populated regions are sampled at higher rates to obtain adequate sample sizes for regional analysis. In Belgium, the Brussels region is oversampled.

6.4.1. MULTI-STAGE SAMPLING

Most HBS sample designs involve the selection of the sample in multiple stages. There are a number of advantages in using clustered, multi-stage sampling. By concentrating the units to be enumerated, it reduces travel costs and other costs of data collection. For the same reason, it can improve the coverage, supervision, control, follow-up and other aspects determining the response rates and quality of the data collected. Survey implementation is more convenient. Selecting the sample in several stages can reduce the cost involved in the preparation and maintenance of the sampling frame since lists need to be maintained only for the selected areas. The work involved in sample selection can also be reduced.

The major disadvantage is the loss of efficiency of the sample due to clustering. The complexity of design and analysis is also increased. Generally the more complex and expensive the data collection per unit (household, individual), the greater is the need to avoid this loss in efficiency. For this reason the cluster sizes used in Household Budget surveys are usually small in comparison with those used in many other, less complex surveys.

As can be seen from Table 2, the most common practice is to use a two-stage design. First, a stratified sample of suitable area units is selected, typically with probabilities proportional to size after stratification by geographical and other variables. The second stage consists of the selection, within each sample area, of households or addresses for inclusion in the survey.

On the other hand, Denmark, Luxembourg, Austria and Sweden use a single-stage sampling scheme involving direct sampling of addresses or households. The same can be said of Germany, though here the situation is more complex. The sample is based on quotas determined from the most recent Microcensus, while its actual selection involves the use of lists from diverse sources not precluding the Microcensus. The Microcensus itself is based on a sample of compact clusters.

In fact the direct selection of households in a single stage for a *part* of the sample is quite a common feature of the designs. In most cases certain areas are automatically included in the sample ('self-representing areas'), thus by-passing the first stage of selection. Single-stage selection is also used for supplements added to the main multi-stage sample: for instance in Ireland a random sample of farm households from the National Farm Survey is added to the HBS; similarly in the United Kingdom, the sample is selected in two stages for Great Britain, but directly in a single stage for Northern Ireland. In Greece some urban regions are always included in the sample and in Italy 150 large communes are automatically included in the sample.

6.4.2. ULTIMATE SAMPLING UNIT

Note may also be taken of the type of units used at the final or ultimate stage of sampling. The objective is, of course, to obtain a sample of households and persons. In most countries, the household itself forms the ultimate sampling unit (USU), but in many the ultimate sampling unit is only found after selecting the address, the dwelling or the person and then 'reconstituting' the household around this unit, this information is shown in Table 2 above. In the cases where all the households occupying an address or a dwelling are enumerated, the ultimate sampling unit is the address or the dwelling. When only some of the households found at the address or dwelling are enumerated, there is, in principle, another sample stage where the ultimate sampling would be the household. If the latter procedure is followed, the sampling procedure at the last stage should be verified for its randomness in order to secure the appropriate coverage of the population.

In practice, the general procedure in these cases is to include all households and persons found at each selected address in the sample, as in Denmark, though for practical reasons a limit is often placed on the maximum number of households to be taken from any address (such as a maximum of three in the United Kingdom and the Netherlands). The coverage is normally on a *de facto* basis; i.e. it is the addresses rather than the particular occupants who are considered selected into the sample. France is a special case in that here the 'household' is defined simply in terms of shared residence, so that there is no difference between the two types of units.

The type of unit used for the final stage of sampling has some important implications. Dwellings/addresses are generally more stable and more easily identified units, and potentially provide a more complete coverage of the survey population. On the other hand, with households as the units, there is a greater potential for stratification by the unit's socio-economic and other characteristics currently of interest.

6.5. SAMPLING FRAME

The former practice of some countries (e.g. Belgium and Ireland) of obtaining a sample from households participating in the Labour Force Survey was abandoned in the last round of HBS.

Now only two main arrangements exist for obtaining the HBS sample:

1. *Registers.* Where available, registers can provide up-to-date lists of households or individuals, with many relevant characteristics useful for stratification and efficient selection of the sample. Examples are Belgium, Denmark, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Finland and Sweden. In such cases special procedures may have to be used to draw a sample of households from lists of individuals in the registers. In United Kingdom, "small users' postal address files" (PAFs) available from the post office are used; these also do not require any special updating, but lack the type of information on household and personal characteristics available in registers. In the Netherlands, two registers are used as sampling frame, the 'Geographic Base Register' for the new sample in general and the 'General Business Register' for a selection of self-employed.
2. *Use of an area frame.* Another common arrangement is to obtain a sample of area units from a suitable source such as the population census (Greece, Spain and Ireland), or a master sample of areas (Portugal), and then to prepare or update lists of households or dwellings in the selected areas for the final sample.

In the first two arrangements, the frame is in the form of lists of the ultimate units (dwellings, households, individuals) from which the sample for the HBS can be drawn directly. In application the sample selection may, of course, involve multiple stages and/or *phases* as described below.

In a third arrangement, the frame is used to draw a sample of area units. The areas may be drawn from the whole frame, as for example from the population census, or from a 'master sample' specially constructed for the purpose. In the areas selected, lists of addresses, households or persons may be prepared or updated from other sources to complete the process of sample selection.

In most cases lists exist which can be used after appropriate updating. Supplements are often added to the main frame to improve coverage.

6.5.1. BASING THE HBS SAMPLE ON ANOTHER, LARGER SAMPLE

Household Budget surveys are complex, generally relatively small in size, and subject to high rates of non-response. There are a number of advantages in selecting the sample for such surveys as a subsample of some larger survey such as the Labour Force survey or the Microcensus, as is done for instance in a part of the sample in the Netherlands (drawn from respondents from previous rounds of the survey) and Germany and Austria (drawn from the Microcensus).

If the larger sample obtains information on demographic, socio-economic and other relevant characteristics of households, that information can be used at all stages in the smaller, more difficult survey:

- at the selection stage, for detailed stratification, making use of characteristics which are usually not available in general sampling frames;
- at the data collection stage, for controlling and carefully matching substitutions for non-respondents;
- for weighting for non-response, making use of information on non-respondents available from the earlier survey;

- for weighting generally, again making use of the 'control totals' provided by the larger survey for many additional variables;
- and when matching at the level of elementary units is possible, for supplementing the smaller survey with variables collected only in the larger survey.

Another major advantage of subsampling from another survey is the simplicity and economy of such an arrangement. Subsampling can be much simpler than selecting a new sample from the whole frame. Furthermore, the use of an existing sample removes the cost of preparing or updating lists of households.

Similar advantages are also obtained in samples drawn from lists (such as registers in Belgium, Denmark, Luxembourg, Finland and Sweden) which contain pertinent information on households and individuals for efficient design and control of the sample selected.

The drawback of using households already included in another survey can be the increased respondent burden due to involvement of the households in more than one survey. Some countries, such as France, preclude such practice as a general rule.

Another drawback is that it is generally necessary to restrict the HBS sample to households for which the previous survey was successfully completed. It is certainly difficult to include households which have already refused to co-operate in an earlier survey. Hence, the non-response of the sampling frame survey should in principle be taken into account when calculating the response rate for the HBS. Likewise, bias in the survey population of the sampling frame survey should be taken into account when designing the HBS sample.

6.5.2. MASTER SAMPLES

A master sample is a large sample drawn for the purpose of common use for different surveys. It may for example be a large sample of addresses from which samples for a particular survey can be drawn directly. Or it may refer only to a sample of higher stage units such as areas, from which a subset can be selected for a particular survey. List frames for the selected areas have then to be compiled to complete the sampling process for the survey.

In France the master sample is constructed from the population census housing files for the areas selected. Similarly in Spain and Portugal, the HBS sample is selected from a master sample of areas from the 1991 population census.

The objectives of using the master sample approach include the following:

- to economise, by sharing between different surveys, the cost of developing and maintaining sampling frames and materials, and costs of sample design and selection;
- to simplify the technical process of drawing individual samples;
- to facilitate substantive as well as operational linkages between different surveys, in particular successive rounds of a continuing survey; and
- to facilitate, as well as restrict and control, the drawing of multiple samples for various surveys from the same frame.

An up-to-date master sample is cost-saving and an efficient tool for the frame preparation and sample selection of surveys. But when up-to-date lists of ultimate units are available, e.g. from registers (as in Denmark, Finland and Sweden) or other sources such as postal addresses (as in the United Kingdom), there may be little point in specially constructing a 'master sample'.

6.5.3. TWO-PHASE SAMPLING

This refers to a special procedure for drawing the sample from an existing sample or lists containing pertinent information on households and individuals for this purpose.

The sample is drawn from the lists in two steps or phases. First, a sample larger than that needed for the HBS is drawn. This is then stratified and appropriately subsampled to obtain the final sample for the HBS. Two-phase sampling is used because information on characteristics of the units in the first phase sample can be used to control the final sample selected in the second phase. For example, units selected in the first phase sample can be stratified to improve sampling efficiency, or to apply different subsampling rates from the first to the second phase. The objective of introducing two phases is to avoid the need to collect or compile such information for the entire frame or lists of units in the population.

In the context of the Household Budget surveys with relatively high rates of non-response, the need to control the distribution of the final sample by household and individual characteristics is by far the most important objective of two-phase sampling.

6.6. STRATIFICATION

Most countries stratify the sample according to certain criteria during the sampling procedure in order to obtain a sample which is representative of the population. Common stratification criteria are region, socio-economic (professional) status of reference person and household type or size. There follows a summary of the sample stages and the stratification criteria used in the individual countries:

B: Three criteria of stratification:

- geographical characteristics (regions: Flanders, Wallonia and Brussels),
- five socio-professional categories: officials, private sector non manual workers, private sector manual workers, self-employed persons, inactive (pensioners or not) combined with 3 major age groups of the reference person in the household (less than 50 years, 50 to 64 years, 65 years and more),
- household size (1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 or more persons).

DK: The sample is selected in one stage, stratified in geographical regions.

D: The quotas drawn in a single stage, are determined by very detailed classification by region (Länder), the monthly household net-income class, socio-economic status of head of household (main income earner) and household type.

GR: The primary stratification criterion was the degree of urbanisation of the municipalities and communes in Greece. This criterion was used to create 11 main strata (1991 census) specifying Athens and Thessaloniki and other municipalities according to size.

In major strata 01 to 06, two-stage sampling was employed, with the housing block or group of contiguous housing blocks (area unit) as the primary unit, and the dwelling as the secondary unit.

In the remaining major strata (07-11), three-stage sampling was used, with the municipality or commune as the primary unit, the housing block or blocks (area unit) as the secondary unit, and the dwelling as the final unit.

E: Census districts were first stratified using a geographical criterion according to the size of municipality the district belongs to, and then according to the socio-demographic characteristics of that district (obtained from the latest census data). Additionally, the stratification was carried out within each "Comunidad Autonoma".

F: The stratification includes two phases. Firstly, a detailed stratification is established by taking into account geographical and socio-economic characteristics. At the second stage dwellings are selected.

IRL: Two stage sampling design used. The sample is initially stratified into urban and rural survey areas, which are then randomly selected at county level to proportionately represent eight different strata relating to population density.

I: The first selection stage consists of 150 large communes which are automatically included in the sample and a sample of more than 400 smaller communes where the sample is stratified by region, average height above sea-level and the main economic activity of the area. The second stage consists of the selection of households.

NL: In order to select participants from the "recruited" households, recourse was taken to background data on household income and the socio-economic group of the head of household. The socio-economic group is a combination of household size (single-person and multi-person households) and occupation (self-employed, employee, non-active). The households were divided into 11 income groups. These characteristics are determined during the "recruitment" phase.

In order to maximise the reliability of the results, a disproportionately greater number of units with self-employed and high income households are selected.

A: Sample is allocated in two stages, uniform for the 9 Austrian regions (Bundesländer=NUTS 2 level) divided into 26 sub-samples.

P: Region NUTS II region is the only criterion for stratification.

FIN: The sample is selected in two phases. Firstly, a master sample of register households is selected. Secondly, the final sample is selected with stratification according to region (NUTS 2 and type of municipality). The inclusion probabilities vary according to household size.

UK: The sample in Great Britain is selected in two stages. Firstly 672 postal sectors stratified by region, area type and 'Census' housing variables (% of owners and % of renters). In stage two, 17 postal addresses are selected per postal sector. In Northern Ireland there is no stratification.

(1) Information supplied by the national delegates in the HBS project

6.7. RESPONSE RATE

High rates of non-response are a common and major problem in Household Budget surveys. In a number of surveys the sample initially selected is substantially, even several-fold, larger than the completed number finally required. At worst, the sample may become essentially self-selected and hence quite unrepresentative of the population of private households. It is therefore important to keep a track of the response rates achieved. Table 20 shows the response rates achieved.

Response rates are not shown for Germany because of the non-random (quota) nature of the procedure used for sample selection.

The lowest response rates are obtained in Belgium where, compared to the other countries, the survey put a heavier response burden on the household. The Belgian HBS is combined with a Time Use Survey.

In principle, the response rate is simply defined and computed as the ratio of the number of households completing participation in the survey to the number of households selected for the survey. However, the computation of response rates is complicated by difficulties in determining the precise number of households 'selected' into the sample. When the sampling units are addresses or dwellings, the number of units of actual interest (households) selected into the sample is not automatically known. Some of the selected addresses may be non-existent or vacant; some may contain more than one household each; and at some addresses, the number of households present may remain unknown as a result of non-contact.

Several factors complicate the computation of response rates:

- lack of randomness in the selection procedure;
- unavailability of or failure to keep proper records of sample implementation;
- use of respondents who have successfully participated in previous rounds of the survey or in some other related survey; and
- substitution for non-respondents.

Records must be kept of the number of units originally selected and the number finally completing participation in the survey. Selected units which are 'blanks', i.e. which do not represent any eligible unit, must be excluded from the above. This requirement is complicated if the units selected (e.g. addresses or dwellings) are not of the same type as the units finally enumerated (e.g. households).

Lack of randomness applies most clearly to the quota sampling used in Germany.

6.8. SUBSTITUTION

Because of high rates of non-response, it is common in Household Budget surveys to substitute for non-respondents in the sample originally selected. Substitutions are usually made after matching with characteristics of the non-respondents to the extent possible. Column (4) of Table 2 shows the number of households completed simply as a ratio of the number originally selected, i.e. completely

disregarding the fact that substitutions may have been made for non-respondents in the original sample.

The practice of making substitutions for non-responding households further complicates the picture concerning response rates. In many situations the extent of and procedures for substitution are not sufficiently controlled, and adequate records of sample implementation not maintained. The procedures actually followed in the field may not correspond to the theoretical procedures defined for the survey. Simply computing response rate as the ratio of the number of households completed to the number originally selected will provide an over-estimate in the presence of substitution. The very concept of 'response rate' loses its meaning if the sample has not been selected with proper probability or randomised procedures.

No substitution is permitted in Belgium, Denmark, France, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Austria, Finland, Sweden and the United Kingdom. In Italy substitutions are allowed, but their effect is not significant on the already good response rates achieved. In Spain households not corresponding at first contact are systematically replaced. The same applies to a lesser extent in Greece, Ireland and Portugal. In the case of Germany, the sample is based on non-random 'quota' procedures and the concept of substitution does not apply.

The substitution procedures used in Greece, Spain, Ireland, Italy and Portugal are reviewed below:

Greece:

Most of the households were substituted if co-operation with the household was impossible for the following reasons:

- unable to contact,
- refusal to cooperate
- temporary absence.

Spain:

*In general, no substitutions are made in seven or eight collaboration of the household. Households which refuse to cooperate on either of their collaborations and those which are absent during a quarter are substituted (except in **seven or eight collaboration**). (Now this last rule has changed, so that a household is substituted if it is absent during two consecutive quarters.)*

Ireland:

At the sample selection stage two samples are selected, an 'original' sample and a substitution sample. Non-co-operating households in the original sample is replaced by households from the substitution sample.

Italy:

Non-responding households are substituted with households chosen according to the household dimension and the place of residence.

Portugal:

Substitutions are made from an extra 25% sample specially selected for the purpose. Substitution is used for empty dwellings, dwellings unable to be located, households refusing to respond when initial contact is made and households unable to respond.

(1) Information supplied by the national delegates in the HBS project

CHAPTER 7 SURVEY STRUCTURE AND CONTENT

7.1. RECORDING PERIOD

In all Household Budget surveys, data collection involves a combination of (a) one or more interviews, and (b) diaries or logs maintained by households and/or individuals, generally on a daily basis.

Table 21 illustrates the overall structure of the surveys within the survey year. The main types of diaries and interviews included and their temporal relationships to each other are shown. The number and type of survey questionnaires and diaries used in the surveys vary from a relatively large number in Belgium and the Netherlands to the most common pattern of having one household and one personal diary plus one or two questionnaires (distributed over one or more interviews). The focus here is on the main diary or diaries in which the household's consumption expenditure is recorded and the main interview(s) through which substantive information on household characteristics and income is obtained.

Several types of diaries may be identified depending on the type of items covered, the responding unit, and the mode of recording the information. In Table 21 three main types are distinguished according to the intensity of recording. The use of questionnaires and interviews is illustrated in table 22 and the use of diaries in table 6 (see below).

- 'Very intensive diaries' refers to the type involving daily recording of all expenditures *and* receipts, such as the diaries maintained for one month of the year by each household in Belgium and by some 20% subsample (gross: 1250 per month; net: - on average - 1080 per month) of households in Germany.
- 'Intensive diaries' refer to the type most commonly used diaries; these involve the daily recording of all consumption expenditures.
- Finally, the 'less intensive' type refers to the recording of consumption on a selective basis, such as in the quarterly logs in the Netherlands. In both cases, only expenditures above a certain specified amount are noted.

The period for which a diary is maintained is called the *recording period* and its duration and distribution over time is the primary determinant of the structure of the survey. The detailed recording period varies from one month in Belgium, Germany and Sweden to just a quarter of a month in the Netherlands. The most common recording period used is 14 days. The recording period may be of the 'fixed' type, i.e. defined in terms of the same calendar period for all households in the sample. This form is uncommon and applies only in cases where some diaries are maintained for a whole year.

In all other cases a 'moving' recording period is used, the exact timing of which is different for different households in the sample. The recording periods are staggered over the survey period to even out the effect of seasonal and other temporal variations for the sample as a whole. This is done by dividing the sample into a number of subsamples, and distributing these subsamples in terms of the recording period uniformly over the survey period. (A household may be said to be 'in the sample' during the period it maintains the diary: for this reason the recording period is sometimes referred to as the household's 'sample period'.) Rows in Table 21 show the sub-samples created for this purpose. The diagram is merely illustrative in the sense that the actual number of subsamples created in any particular survey may be different (usually higher) than that shown.

Ideally each subsample should be geographically and otherwise representative of the whole population, so that the sample's distribution over space and over time is controlled simultaneously.

The basic arrangement is to divide the sample into (say) s subsamples related to the length of the recording period (d days, weeks or months) over the survey year (Y days, weeks or months) as:

$$s = Y/d$$

For example with a recording period of 2 weeks, the sample may be divided into 26 parts for this purpose. With this pattern it is possible to arrange the recording periods for the subsamples without gaps or overlaps over the survey year, thus distributing the recording task continuously and uniformly for the survey as a whole.

Sometimes fewer representative subsamples are created than the number implied by the above. This makes the recording periods less uniformly distributed (introducing peaks and gaps), but can increase flexibility in scheduling the survey operations and reduce costs. As an example, in France with a recording period of 2 weeks per household and 48 weeks for the whole survey, the sample is divided into 8 (rather than 24) representative subsamples, each covering a period of 6 weeks within which its recording can be accommodated more flexibly.

Notes : (Table 21)

Across the columns is shown the survey year (52 weeks), and for each survey the rows show how operations (main interviews and diary recording) are distributed over time for different subsamples or groups of households. For example, in the case of Germany, there are 12 subsamples, each maintaining a 'very intensive' diary during a different month of the year.

The recording may differ in intensity. 'Very intensive' are normally those involving the daily recording of expenditures and receipts; 'intensive' means full recording of all consumption; expenditures and 'less intensive' means doing so on a selective basis. In many cases, diaries or questionnaires also involve what may be best described as retrospective recording.

In most cases, two main interviews have been identified, normally conducted before and/or after the recording period. One of these (usually the second) obtains information on income. There may also be other interviews, such as for initial contact and at various times during the recording period for checking and other purposes; these are not shown here.

THE COMMON MODEL (Denmark, France, Greece, Luxembourg, Ireland, Portugal, Austria, Sweden and Finland and United Kingdom)

A limited recording period per household of 14 days except for Sweden where it is 4 weeks and in Spain where it is one week. 'Intensive' type of diary, involving the full recording of consumption expenditures irrespective of the amount (but not of income and receipts).

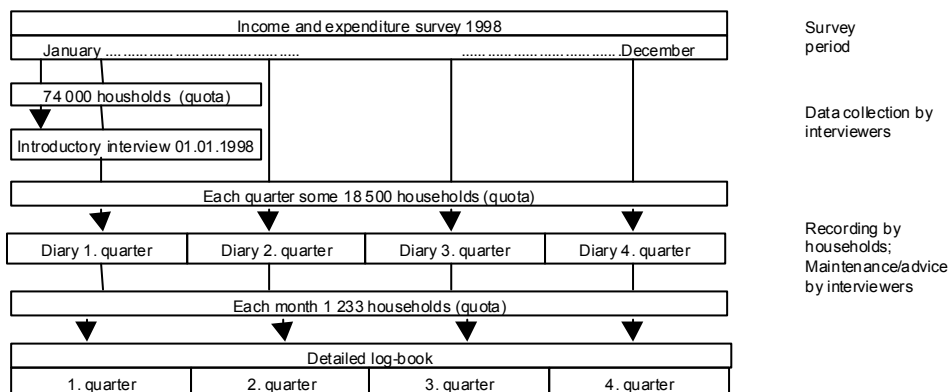
Division of the sample into representative subsamples for interviewing and diary keeping at different times, distributed over the survey year so as to achieve representativeness simultaneously in space and time. Consequently, the use of 'moving' reference and recording periods.

Generally two main interviews, one immediately before and the other immediately after the recording period for the particular subsample of households, income being covered in the interview after the diary recording period. Some interviewing may also take place during the recording period itself as in France, Spain, Greece and Austria. In Greece daily interviewer visits are required over the recording period. In Ireland, Sweden, Finland and United Kingdom only one visit is conducted just before the intensive recording period, though, in United Kingdom the interviewer returns to the household after the diary keeping period to pick up the diary. In Ireland and United Kingdom, two interviews are conducted at the visit, one for the household and one for each member covering income. In Ireland some 10% of the sample incorporated from the national farm survey is enumerated throughout the year.

Additional comment given by the Irish delegate: In Ireland, two interviews are conducted at the visit, one for the household and one for each member. However during the first interview, the interviewer endeavours to obtain as much information as possible from each member. Up to about 3 further visits are made during the 14-day diary period where the interviewer ensures that the diaries are being completed correctly and collects any outstanding information from the questionnaire stage. During the final visit, the interviewer checks for completeness and collects the expenditure diaries.

Germany

For the whole sample: recording of all receipts and of expenditures the entire duration of the survey year (in 3-months logs); one introductory interview at the beginning of the survey year (Jan 1). For each of the 12 subsamples: the maintenance of records of all receipts and all expenditures irrespective of the amount (i.e., a 'very intensive' diary) during a particular month of the year.



Belgium

Diary for a period of a month registering all the expenditure in details as well as all income; retrospective questions for durable expenditure (month of survey and 3 months before) in household diary.

Netherlands

For the whole sample: daily recording of expenditures over a certain amount for each quarter of the whole survey year; maintenance of a special holiday diary during the course of the year as required; an initial interview before the survey year; and the main interview covering income after the end of the survey year. For each subsample: the maintenance of records of all expenditures irrespective of the amount (i.e., keeping an 'intensive' diary) during a different week of the year. Periodic expenditures are covered by a questionnaire filled in by the household.

Italy

For the purpose of recording, the sample covered in the course of a month comprises three subsamples, each covering a 10 day period during the month. There is only one main interview and it takes place at the end of the recording month or at the beginning of the calendar month following the 10 day recording period.

Spain

For illustration, the sample is shown divided into 13 samples, entering the survey in successive weeks of a quarter. Households in strong collaboration in each sub-sample maintains a diary for one week, and the interviews with each household are conducted in the course of this recording week. Except for the fact that one-eighth of the sample is replaced from one quarter to the next, the above pattern is repeated on the same samples during each of the 4 quarters of the year. A household remains in the sample for 8 consecutive quarters.

In practice there may be variations from the models described above because of practical problems during survey implementation. It is not always possible to ensure that the survey is conducted exactly according to the time schedule in the model, or that the fieldwork (and hence the subsamples) can be uniformly distributed over the year. In addition there are also situations when for some households in the sample the recording period is *deliberately* changed because of special reasons or circumstances.

7.2. SURVEY INSTRUMENTS

Table 22 gives an overview of the various types of questionnaires, interviews and possible registers used in the Household Budget surveys. The list is complete as concerns the main instruments used for the collection of substantive information; most surveys include additional documents of a more administrative nature as well. Several items of information can be distinguished in the table in relation to each survey instrument:

- *The basic recording unit.* The information collected may pertain to the household as a whole or to its individual members. The latter refers to information on economic activity, income, personal expenditures etc. collected separately for (and usually personally from) each individual.
- *The respondent.* Depending on the 'respondent rules' used in the survey, information pertaining to the whole household may have to be provided by the household head or spouse; personal information by the particular member concerned; while information of a more general nature may be given by any 'suitable' member of the household.
- *The method of collection.* A distinction is made between collection through personal interviewing and self-recording by the respondent. Telephone interviewing and postal enquiries are rarely used.
- *The mode of recording.* The basic distinction is between daily recording, and recording retrospectively using reference periods of various types and duration. Generally, daily recording goes with self-completed diaries, and retrospective recording with personal interviewing. However there are some departures from this pattern. Some self-completed diaries or questionnaires involve a sort of retrospective recording. In the Netherlands, self-recording is in fact used quite extensively where possible, for example in the recording of own production, holiday expenses, regular expenditures and income. In Greece, as the sole exception, the opposite arrangement also occurs: diary-recording on the basis of daily visits by the interviewer.
- *Timing of the interviews.* Table 22 also notes the timing of retrospective interviews in relation to the timing of the main record-keeping by the household. The interviews may take place before (Germany), during or soon after the recording period, or they may be conducted after the month of recording (Italy), or more commonly after the end of the full survey year (Netherlands).
- *The main objective.* Table 22 provides an indication in terms of broad categories of the type of information collected. See Annex 1, Survey Profiles, for further details on the content of individual surveys.

Table 22: Main survey instruments: Questionnaires/Interviews/Registers

	Instrument:	Recording unit:	Main objective(s):	Mode:
B	3 interviews, one before the month of survey, one during the month of survey and one after the month of survey	household/ individual	characteristics of household members, activity age, education, ... housing characteristics, possession of durables, periodic payments, rental value of owner-occupier dwelling, housing charges, combined invoices, ...	present(1)
DK	1 questionnaire over two interviews just before and after the intensive recording period	household/ individual	household characteristics, regular expenditures, bigger purchases, possession of durables, information about pensions and use of public services	present, 12 months retrospective
	register	individual	income, accomodation, education, taxes and activity	present (2)
D	introductory interview at the beginning of recording year	individual/ household	household characteristics, education, occupation, income, housing, durables	present
GR	enumerators visit the household over 14 consecutive days	individual/ household	household characteristics, employment, income, qualitative questions on economic situation	present
E	Households in strong collaboration: 3 visits to household during the interview quarter	household/ individual	household characteristics, periodical expenses and bigger purchases. The last visit is used for checking all documentation	present, 1 and 3 months retrospective
	Households in weak collaboration: 2 visits to household during the interview quarter	household	household characteristics, periodical expenses and bigger purchases. The last visit is used for checking all documentation	1 and 3 months retrospective
F				
IRL	household questionnaire filled in before intensive recording period	household	household characteristics, housing and amenities	present and 12 months retrospective
	individual questionnaire filled in before intensive recording period	individual	employment, occupation, income, regular personal payments	present and 12 months retrospective
	specific questionnaires for agricultural households and their members	household/ individual	same content but in reduced form as the general questionnaires	present and 12 months retrospective
I	interview at the end of the month	household	household characteristics, income class, holidays, durables, saving, periodic expenses and bigger purchases	present, 1 and 12 months retrospective
L	2 interviews at the beginning and end of intensive recording period using 4 questionnaires	household/ individual	household characteristics/ housing and durables/ expenditures of less frequent nature	present, 3 and 12 months retrospective
NL	recruitment questionnaire	household	background characteristics of household for deciding inclusion in survey	present
	general data questionnaire completed before recording year	household/ individual	household characteristics, housing and durables	present
	retro questionnaire completed after end of recording year	household/ individual	change of situation during recording year	present
	regular expenditure questionnaire	household	regular expenditures	present
	meter readings questionnaire	household	meter readings read three times, before, in the middle of and after the recording year	present
	income questionnaire	household/ individual	completed after recording year when annual statements are received	12 months retrospective
P	the household is visited at least 5 times and 4 questionnaires (+ 1 for poverty) are filled in	household/ individual	household characteristics and income/ retrospective questionnaire on bigger purchases/ qualitative questions on poverty	present, 1, 2, 12 months retrospective
A	2 interviewer's visits: one before and one after the recording period	household/ individual	household information: housing (including housing expenditure), durables, standard of living, some expenditures (retrospective) personal information: basic variables (age, sex, ...), income, holiday, individual expenditures	present, 1 and 12 months retrospective
FIN	one interview just before intensive recording period	household/ individual	household characteristics, housing durables, debts, health and certain other expenditures.	present, 3 and 12 months retrospective
	register information	individual	income	present
S	one interview at the beginning of survey period	household/ individual	household characteristics, housing, infrequent expenditures	present, 12 months retrospective
	register information	individual	income, education and social benefits	present
UK	household questionnaire completed at the beginning of survey period	household	household characteristics, housing, infrequent expenditures	present, 3, 6, 12 months retrospective

- (1) Present information is obtained at one point of time, at the time of the interview.
(2) Register information relates either to a calendar year or to status as at 1 January.

7.3. SURVEY INTERVIEWS

In any survey a sample household may be subject to more than one interview during the time it is in the survey. Considering the main interviews, the common pattern is to have two interviews per household arranged around the recording period. Mostly these consist of an initial interview before the recording period, and a final interview after the recording period. Generally, background characteristics are covered in the first interview and income questions in the second — though there are of course variations on this from one country to another. Also, in most cases the interval between the interviews and the diary recording is made as short as practical. The interviews involve moving reference periods of various lengths depending on the item (see recording period).

This standard pattern applies in Denmark, Luxembourg, France, Portugal, Greece and Austria. A part of the interviewing in Greece falls within the recording period.

The same pattern applies in Sweden and Finland except that only one interview is conducted, just before the start of the recording period.

In Ireland and United Kingdom, the one visit refers, respectively, to a household interview and an individual interview with each adult member of the household; and both these types of interviews are conducted immediately *before* the recording period. It may be the case that this arrangement helps to improve the quality (and possibly co-operation as well) in diary recording. It has also been argued in relation to the UK survey that it is more 'honest' to let the respondent know, prior to the diary period, that the survey involves detailed interviewing on individual income. Having two visits, on the other hand, allows interviewer able to prepare the household on forthcoming questions in terms of ordering receipts and bank accounts.

In Italy, there is only one main interview. It is conducted after the recording period of 10 days, at the end of the calendar month during which the household keeps the diary or at the beginning of the following month.

In Spain, and for households in strong collaboration, besides the initial and final interviews before and after the recording period, usually another visit is made more or less in the middle of that period, specially in the first strong collaboration of the household. The aim of this visit is to supervise the household's proper collaboration. On the other hand, for households in weak collaboration only two visits are made during the quarter.

In countries where each household participates in the survey for the full year (Netherlands), the main interviews are concentrated as far as possible over short periods for the whole sample, i.e. over periods immediately before and immediately after the survey year. In the Netherlands, the households are visited 7 to 8 times by the interviewer during the survey year — once before the survey year, three times during the intensive diary-keeping period, and four times for the quarterly logs. In Belgium, different interviews on specific topics are also carried out throughout the recording period.

7.4. QUESTIONNAIRES

Most of the questionnaires used have been designed in verbatim form, i.e. the questions to be asked are spelled out in detail and fully written out in the form in which they should be asked. This approach has the advantage in principle of better structuring and controlling the interview. The

major disadvantage is the greatly increased physical length of the questionnaire; also if carried too far, it can make the questionnaire confusing and inconvenient to use.

A number of questionnaires have been transferred to CAPI. The routing of these questionnaires is facilitated by the advantages inherent in electronic devices, and the possibilities for structuring the questionnaire have increased considerably.

The questionnaires used by the national statistical offices show that there is a wide scope for organising their lay-out and content. Some countries have one big questionnaire where all subjects are treated in successive order, whereas other countries operate with a number of questionnaires each devoted to a more specific subject. Of course, the organisation of questionnaires depends on the organisation of the other aspects of the survey e.g. diaries, visits and recording practices.

In most countries the basic questionnaire would be the household questionnaire. This records the characteristics of the household members, their relationships, and information on individual members such as occupation, employment and education. Details of the household's housing situation are also recorded, and often the availability and expenditure on durable goods and amenities.

Besides such a general questionnaire, many countries have specialised questionnaires on different expenditure items, for example holidays, transport or gas and electricity. A number of countries also have questionnaires specifically devoted to recording income, savings, debt and poverty. Belgium combines HBS with TUS.

7.5. DIARIES

All Household Budget surveys in the Community contain a diary component in which households record all items of daily consumption and/or expenditure. Several variants are possible. The basic distinction is between a household-type diary maintained for the whole household and individual-type diaries, one maintained by each member.

1. A single diary may be maintained by the household for a specified period in which all items of consumption and/or expenditure common to the household are recorded by some member of the household on a daily basis. This for example is the procedure followed in Italy, where each household maintains a diary for a period of 10 days, the sample being uniformly distributed over the survey year for this purpose. To this basic model various complexities may be added.

The main household-type diary may be supplemented, usually on a voluntary basis, by expense or 'pocket' books kept by individual persons for the purpose of facilitating the recording of personal expenditures.

2. In place of recording data for the whole household in the same document, separate documents may be used for each member of the household above a certain age. Individual-level diaries are used in four countries: France and Spain for each person aged 14 or over, Ireland for each person of 15 or over, and the United Kingdom for each person of 16 or over. In the United Kingdom additional information on food consumption is available from the National Food Survey which uses household-type diaries to record the cost and quantities of food consumed.

Countries using individual-type diaries may nevertheless use a special (expanded) version for the member mainly responsible for purchases for the household, normally the housewife. This for example is the case in France, Ireland and Spain, but not the practice in the United Kingdom survey.

3. Additional forms of the diaries may also be involved to facilitate the recording of particular items, such as holidays and energy consumption (meter readings) in the Netherlands.
4. In some cases special forms of diaries are used for certain categories of households, e.g. agricultural households in Ireland.
5. Retrospective components, supplementing the daily records, also occur in most countries including Belgium, Greece, Spain, France, Ireland, Luxembourg, Portugal, Austria, Finland, Sweden and the United Kingdom.
6. The length of the intensive recording period ranges from 30 days in Belgium and Germany, and 28 days in Sweden and the Spanish continuous survey (7 days in each quarter), to only a quarter of a month in the Netherlands. Two weeks is the most common practice, as in Denmark, France, Luxembourg, Ireland, Austria, Portugal, Finland, Sweden and United Kingdom.
7. When the recording period is longer than two weeks, some countries use separate books, each covering a part of the total recording period. Example are two books one for each week in the United Kingdom and Ireland, quarterly logs in the Netherlands, and 3-month logs in Germany.

Table 23: Main survey instruments: Diaries

	Type of diary	Design of diary	Recording Unit	Recording Period	Comment
B	very intensive		Household	1 month	all expenditures in detail and income, including receipts, savings and debts
DK	intensive	open ended	household	14 days	all expenditures of daily nature
	intensive, pocket diary	open ended	individual	14 days	voluntary, expenditures of daily nature
D	household diary	closed	household	4x3 months	income and receipts, expenditures
	detailed log book	open ended	household	1 month	diary given to subsample, very detailed recording of consumption of food, beverages and tobacco plus consumption outside the home
GR	intensive Expenditure form 1	closed	household	14 days	all types of expenditure
	intensive Expenditure form 2	closed	individual	14 days	recording of expenditure of a personal nature for each member of the household aged over 14 or over
E	intensive diary	open ended	household	4x7 days	all expenditures including consumption of own production and benefits in kind
	intensive diary	open ended	individual	4x7 days	personal expenditures of persons aged 14 years or over
F	intensive diary	open ended	household	14 days	all expenditures including consumption of own production
	intensive diary	open ended	individual	14 days	personal expenditures of persons aged 14 years or more
IRL	intensive diary	open ended	household	14 days	household expenditures including business expenditures
	intensive diary	open ended	individual	14 days	personal expenditures
I	intensive diary	closed	household	10 days	expenditures in general
	diary for own production and benefits in kind	open ended	household	10 days	consumption of own production and benefits in kind
L	household intensive diary	open ended	household	15 days	expenditure in general
	pocket money diary	open ended	individual 16+	15 days	personal expenditures
NL	household diary 1	open ended	household	1 year minus the one week intensive recording period and holidays	less intensive diary for recording expenditures of more than 35 HFL
	household diary 2	open ended	household	quarter of a month	all expenditures including place, quantity and type of payment
	holiday diary	open ended	household	holidays	expenditures incurred during holidays
P	intensive diary	open ended	household	14 days	expenditures in general
	individual diary	open ended	individual	14 days	personal expenditures for each member of the household aged 14 or over
A	intensive diary	semi closed	household	14 days	all expenditures, including meals outside the home
	individual diary	open ended	individual	14 days	voluntary, personal expenditures
FIN	intensive diary	open ended	household	14 days	expenditures, including meals outside the home and quantities of own production
	pocket diary	open ended	individual	14 days	personal expenditures
S	intensive diary	open ended	household	4 weeks	expenditures
	personal diary	open ended	individual	4 weeks	voluntary, personal expenditures
UK	personal intensive diary	structured open ended	individual 16+	14 days	expenditures

Most commonly, the recording is on a daily basis, but in some cases retrospective recording is also involved. Three forms of recording can be distinguished in the table:

- Recording on a daily basis, in which separate provision is made (in the form of a separate page or table) for each day.
- Chronological recording from one day to the next, but without an explicit separation of days on different pages or tables.
- Various forms of retrospective recording, including information pertaining to the time of the interview.

The general form of the diary and the degree of detail with which items to be recorded are explicitly specified is important because they can affect the quality and completeness of the information obtained. However, they also affect the burden on the respondent. Generally it may be simplest for the respondent to record all expenses chronologically, without any order imposed by pre-specified categories (open-ended). However, for diaries which involve retrospective recording in particular, completeness in reporting may depend critically on the extent to which specific categories of expenditure are explicitly covered. Often a compromise form is used, in which major categories are explicitly listed, but not the individual items within each category.

Some examples are:

- In Belgium daily expenses are recorded for each day on a separate page. This form facilitates the totalling and checking of daily results. Own-production entering the household or consumed by it is also recorded chronologically on a daily basis, but without the provision of a separate page or table for each day. In the case of daily expenses, the recording is completely open-ended i.e. there are no pre-specified categories; while in the recording of own-consumption, a distinction is made according to whether the production is from the main or a subsidiary activity of the household. There is no further itemisation in either case.
- In Germany, detailed pre-specified categories by item or type of expenditure are used for the 3-month logs (monthly recording), while the detailed log book (current recording) is largely open-ended in form. By contrast, the Netherlands uses the open-ended form even for the quarterly logs (which in principle involve recording on a daily basis), while some countries such as Italy use detailed itemised lists for the recording of daily expenses.
- In many diaries, detailed lists or examples are provided to aid the respondent but the recording itself is mainly open-ended.

As regards content, daily expenditures in cash are generally covered in all countries. Generally, information on cash income is obtained in the interview part of the survey. A complete record of income and receipts is sought in Belgium for one month on a daily basis. In Italy a single question on household income is included as an annex to the diary. The diaries (involving retrospective recording) maintained in Portugal also cover some components of non-monetary income but not on a retrospective recall basis. Some receipts are also recorded in the Netherlands, but that appears to be primarily for the purpose of more accurate measurement of consumption expenditure.

7.6. REFERENCE PERIODS

Reference period means the time-duration to which a particular item of information relates. With continuous recording, the reference period is by definition the same as the recording period. In the retrospective interview or self-reporting, a range of reference periods are used, such as one month for frequent items and a whole year for infrequent items. The use of a longer reference period increases the volume (the effective sample size) of the information obtained; however it also tends to increase the biases due to recall errors. A compromise is therefore required in the choice of the reference period. The appropriate choice depends on the frequency, salience and regularity of occurrence of the items or events concerned.

Tables 22 and 23 show some examples (albeit in a simplified form) of the *lengths* of the reference periods used for different types of items in different countries. Despite the similarity in requirements, there is indeed a surprising degree of variation among the Household Budget surveys in the type and duration of reference periods used. Less frequent but small and irregular items, such as clothing and shoes, are recorded with a shorter reference period, normally one or three months. A similar pattern across the countries is found in relation to expenses relating to housing. Generally major expenses are recorded with a reference period of one year.

7.6.1. FIXED VERSUS MOVING REFERENCE PERIODS

As to the *type* of the reference period, two basic distinctions may be noted. The first is the distinction between fixed and moving reference periods, already introduced in relation to the diary-recording period. Each form has its advantages. The use of a fixed reference period, defined in terms of specified calendar dates, provides information related to a definite time, which is the same for all units, interviewed. This avoids different 'period' or seasonal effects (e.g. influence of the weekend, end of the calendar month) on the results from different households. A fixed period may also be more suitable for linkages with other data, especially from administrative sources, which often refer to a fixed period in time. On the other hand, the use of a fixed reference period makes the recall period (i.e. the duration over which the respondent has to remember the information to be reported) not only longer, but also different for different respondents depending on when a particular household in the sample is interviewed. This can be serious problem if the fieldwork is spread out over a relatively long period of time - such as a whole year as is common in Household Budget surveys. The use of a fixed reference period is more appropriate when the fieldwork duration can be made short.

In Household Budget surveys, the use of a moving reference period, defined in terms of specified duration measured backwards from the time of the interview, is by far the most common practice. All interviews, apart from the final interviews in the Netherlands and Belgium, use a variety of moving reference periods.

Another variant is to use a moving calendar period, for example the last calendar month, as distinct from the past 30 days. For certain items occurring with a regular frequency (such as monthly wages received, monthly rent or bills paid), the 'last payment' approach mentioned below effectively amounts to a 'moving calendar period' approach.

7.6.2. THE LAST PAYMENT APPROACH

The second important distinction is between the use of a reference period (whether fixed or moving) of a specified duration, and the 'last payment approach' in which the amount last paid and the corresponding period covered is recorded. It is possible that this latter approach is less subject to recall errors. It is particularly suited for items and events which occur with certain regularity and which are not too frequent. Extensive use is made of the last payment approach in the Netherlands, United Kingdom, Ireland, France and, to some extent, in Sweden but hardly in other surveys.

7.6.3. REFERENCE PERIOD FOR AGGREGATED DATA

Finally, the figure below has been constructed to illustrate the effect of the length and type of the reference period on the results aggregated over households in the sample. With a moving reference period, it becomes important to distinguish the reference period as it is defined for a particular household, from the period covered by the information aggregated for the survey as a whole. The former is relevant for data collection, while it is the latter which is relevant for data analysis and use.

Consider a survey in which fieldwork is carried out in a continuous manner and uniformly distributed over a year, with a *moving reference period* of length " x " (fraction in years). The information obtained from the units enumerated at the very beginning of the survey relates to interval x immediately prior to the survey period.

Consequently, the total period to which the survey data relate is x plus the survey period of one year. The number of units for which the information is obtained is not uniform throughout the $(x+1)$ years. It increases from zero to a maximum during the first x , stays at that maximum for the next $(1-x)$, and finally declines to zero over the last x years. This will not make much difference if x is a short reference period such as one week. However, the situation is quite different when x is a long reference period such as a year. Here the information relates to two years: the year before the survey and the survey year. The number of units providing retrospective information relating to any point during these two years has a triangular distribution, with peak at the beginning of the survey year itself.

The survey therefore does not directly provide estimates for a single specified year: that would require inefficient weighting of the information inversely according to the number of units covered at each time during the year, and discarding the information which relates to time outside the year. On the other hand, the unweighted results *can* be used directly to study monthly or seasonal variation if it does not matter from which particular year in the two years the data came from.

The above difficulties do not arise if a fixed reference period is used, i.e. a reference period defined by the same, fixed calendar dates for all respondents. But there are of course other problems with using fixed reference periods as noted earlier.

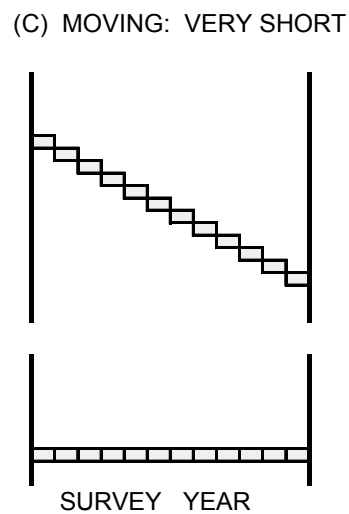
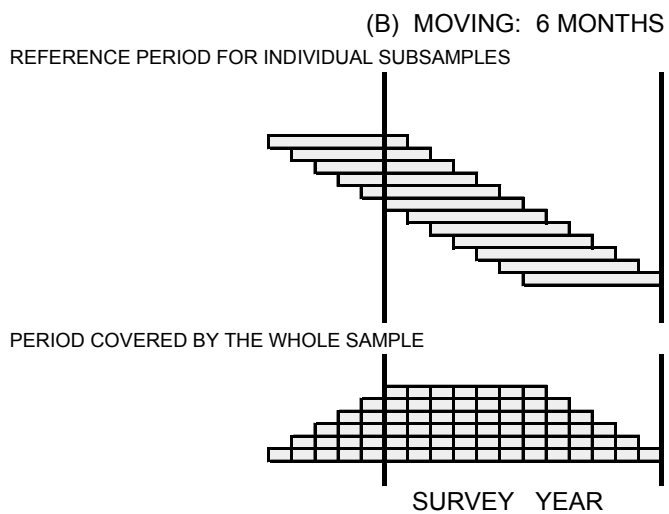
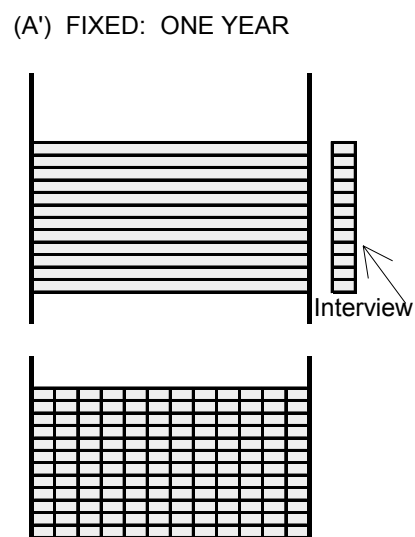
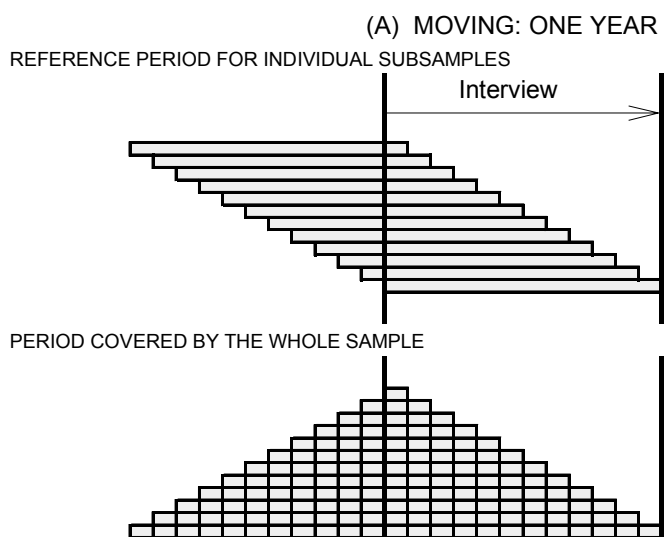
The table shows the effect of the type and length of the reference period on the period covered in the whole survey. The type refers to whether the reference period is 'moving' or 'fixed'. A fixed reference period means a period of the same duration and timing for all units in the sample, irrespective of the timing of their interviewing.

With a moving reference period the duration is the same, but the actual time covered differs from one unit or subsample to another depending on the timing of its interview. With interviewing

distributed over the whole survey year, the period covered for the sample as a whole includes the survey year, and extends beyond it into the preceding year depending on the length of the moving reference period. With the reference period also of one year, the period covered in the survey extends over two years with a triangular density distribution (diagram A). As the length of the moving reference period is reduced, the coverage becomes more concentrated in the actual survey year, and more rectangular in shape (diagrams B and C). With a fixed reference period, the coverage is always confined to the fixed survey year, and is rectangular in shape (diagram A') irrespective of the length of the fixed reference period.

Another effect of the length is on the 'quantity' of the time covered, as indicated by the area of the diagram representing the period covered by the whole sample. In a sense, this is the effective sample size. This quantity does not depend on the type of the reference period but only on its length: for example, it is the same for diagrams (A) and (A'). It is reduced in proportion to the length of the reference period (as in diagrams B and C).

EFFECT OF TYPE AND LENGTH OF REFERENCE PERIOD



CHAPTER 8 CHECKING AND WEIGHTING OF DATA

The phase of quality control of the data produced is essential to the Household Budget surveys, given the complexity of this type of survey. It is thus necessary to rid the data sets of the main errors detected. This chapter does not cover all possible checks, which depend largely on the specific characteristics of each survey, but merely gives a general idea of the checks carried out by the countries as well as by Eurostat.

Techniques used to calculate imputations for missing data will be looked at with a view to obtaining exhaustive data sets. Obviously, imputation calculations are applied only if a small amount of data is missing. In the case of the Household Budget surveys, this might apply to income data in certain countries.

In the third and final part, we will look at data weighting procedures. Although the link with data checks may not seem clear, weighting is one way of improving the quality of the data produced. In particular, sample representativeness can be improved if instances of non-response are taken into account. As with data checks and correction, weighting is an essential stage, and is one that is implemented after collection.

8.1. CHECKING DATA FROM THE HOUSEHOLD BUDGET SURVEY

The quality of the results obtained from the Household Budget surveys may be affected by various types of error. One such error that affects the overall quality of the survey is the observation (or collection) error¹⁴, which should be corrected wherever possible. Other errors arise during input, encryption or data processing. The major part of checking and correction work is done at national level. Eurostat contributes also to the checking task by building a list of aggregated control tables with a selection of the most relevant variables which are compared with data of other rounds, other countries and other sources in order to detect plausibility problems.

8.1.1. CHECK PROGRAM CARRIED OUT BY THE COUNTRIES

The following table summarises the controls implemented by each country:

¹⁴ This may, for example, be due to the omission of enumerated households, to the recording of expenditure incurred outside the reference period, or to false declarations. This is where enumerator training and backup come into their own.

Table 24: Control procedures by country ¹⁾

B	Control of the housing expenditure (separate grouped variables) Control of balance between income and expenditure Control of coherence between diary and questionnaires Controls to avoid duplication, forgetting, etc
DK	Controls implemented at the interview phase, checks via register data and by making probability intervals
D	In the Länder statistical offices, the contents of the survey documents are checked for completeness and pre-plausibility checking is roughly done. Comprehensive plausibility checks are carried out by the Federal Statistical Office after receipt of the survey documents by the Länder.
GR	Questionnaires were checked in three stages: for the completeness and logical consistency of the data collected, and their correct entry. The officials in charge of the checks, in accordance with the enumerator guidelines and other objective facts, correlated the data both within questionnaires and with the data contained in the questionnaires for other households in the same region in order to verify that the answers given were correct. Mistakes were corrected, and any unclear answers explained, in conjunction with the enumerator or the enumerated household.
E	Tests are carried out on the consistency and coherence of the variables and confidence intervals are computed for values, quantities and prices. Where necessary, the amounts are imputed. For variables which do not deal with expenditure or income, the statistical institute's DIA program was used to detect and impute errors in these sections.
F	Coherence controls were programmed in CAPI to detect possible errors of input. In addition, an a posteriori treatment makes it possible to detect other inconsistencies (probability checks).
IRL	The data returned by individual households were further checked by computer for consistency and completeness. Invalid checks were clerically investigated and corrected where necessary. The data were recycled through this computer validation process until all apparent defects were satisfactorily corrected.
I	The data are corrected on a probabilistic methodologies, based on donor method. For qualitative and few quantitative variables missing data are imputed.
L	By the private firm; logical controls.
NL	During or immediately after input, the data are automatically checked and various derivations become available. In the case of questionnaires containing mainly closed questions, three different checks are performed on the answers: - value checks (the input value must be in a certain band); - ratio checks (the combination of values with different variables must be correct); - flow-chart or completeness checks (have the questions which should have been answered actually been answered?). At the end of each quarter, a check is carried out to ensure that all the households have submitted all the relevant documents. A household which fails to submit a household diary or Regular Expenditure questionnaire will almost certainly be removed from the sample permanently. In addition to automatic checks on individual items, plausibility checks are performed at aggregated level. Overviews of the results for each article (average price, average quantity etc.) are compiled and used to detect and correct any systematic errors in good time.
A	Expenditures: controls to avoid duplications and 'oversights'; controls with upper and lower limits for each position of expenditures (clarification mainly directly with the household); a posteriori check of the expenditure data with the data of Private Consumption of National Accounts. Amounts of food (kilo, litre, etc); a posteriori check with supply balance sheet. Variables: computerised logical checks (clarification mainly directly with the household); a posteriori checks with the Austrian Microcensus. Income: Missing income values have been imputed.
P	Automatic control procedures are installed during the data collection phase. The entire database is checked and corrected in retrospect in order to produce consistent and reliable data. This was done primarily by cross-referencing certain variables, enabling errors to be identified and corrected.
FIN	Many internal checks are carried out. External controls are done with national account estimates, data from the retail sale and census data.
S	Different types of control are made as data entry controls, computerised controls and macro (external) controls.
UK	The data go through extensive quality control, starting with the range and consistency checks in to the CAPI interview programme and including automatic outlier detection and checks for consistency between expenditure and income.
IS	Control checks are performed in order to identify unreasonable answers. Missing values are imputed for, either by a value recognition as correct from another source or by a simple statistics such as mean or median.
N	Validity control, logical control and control of minimum-maximum values.

(1) Information supplied by the national delegates in the HBS project

8.1.2. CHECK PROGRAM CARRIED OUT BY EUROSTAT

In addition to the controls carried out by each country, Eurostat performs a last control of the main basic variables at aggregate level.

Some variables are indispensable, while others have a lower priority. Rather than being regularly referred to, the latter are used only for specific, occasional requests.

Since the Household Budget Survey (HBS) mainly concerns information about households, we emphasise the quality of variables that see households as a consumption unit (including expenditure and income). Nonetheless, some of the variables provide information about individual members of the household. Consequently, data concerning individuals are important, while priority is given to those that can be used to calculate derived variables.

The important member and household variables that absolutely require high quality were listed in Chapter 5. This list should allow Eurostat to speed up the processing of national micro-data by simplifying re-coding and allowing us to eliminate the constant back-and-forth flow of information between Eurostat and Member States, the uncertainty resulting from the vastness of the field covered and coding errors resulting from Eurostat's imperfect knowledge of national nomenclatures.

The definition of all the variables is presented in Annex 2: European codes for the main background variables and units.

The HBS uses two kinds of variables.

“Basic” variables are provided directly by the country concerned. Re-coding may be a simple assignation, or a more complex calculation. “Derived” variables, on the other hand, are derived from these.

The aim of this additional control is to focus on the quality and exhaustiveness of the basic variables, which are indispensable for analysing results, calculating secondary variables, and determining other variables which may occasionally be needed.

The HBS uses a set of precise, tested, and documented calculation rules. Technically, standard programs are used that process all the countries in the same way. This guarantees the quality of calculation of derived variables, as well as their comparability. If any basic variables are missing, the secondary variables must be constructed on a case-by-case basis, reducing precision and increasing the risk of error.

When, as is sometimes the case, the country provides secondary variables with the primary variables, we use them as controls for the quality of the re-coding, and to verify that the results we obtain really are comparable with those we can obtain elsewhere.

The worst situation for Eurostat is to be provided with the derived variables only, lacking both the basic information, which would allow us to recalculate them according to our rules and the calculation rules followed by the country. This can produce surprising results that vary significantly from country to country depending on the transformation rules used.

One Eurostat receives a complete data set of one country, these data are processed and the aggregate control data tables are produced. These tables are checked for plausibility against data of the same country of other rounds, data of the other countries and data of other sources. Then these control tables are sent back with some comments to the corresponding country for validation. Only if both Eurostat and the country agree that all the data included in the control tables are plausible, are the HBS data of that country incorporated in the European HBS data base.

8.2. TREATMENT OF MISSING DATA

As missing data adversely affect the quality of data sets, it is better to impute 'notional' values to ensure that information is exhaustive. However, if key variables for a particular household show too many errors, or if too many data are missing, it can be assumed that the household in question has not co-operated satisfactorily in the survey. In this case, the best solution is to remove the household and adjust the weighting coefficients for the other households accordingly. This can be classed as refusal to participate in the survey, otherwise known as "item non-response".

The second category of non-response ("partial non-response") concerns households which have supplied high-quality information for most variables, but for which data on other variables are missing. It is this category of non-response that is covered by the procedure of treatment of missing data. This procedure consist first in detecting missing data, and then imputing these data by using a suitable procedure such as deductive, deterministic or stochastic imputation.

However, when for a specific variable the proportion of missing data in relation to the total number of households exceeds a certain threshold, it must be asked whether or not imputation is appropriate, as this variable cannot then be used for analytical purposes.

The detection and imputation of missing data have been done nationally. As a general rule, therefore, Eurostat has received complete basic data sets. However, in certain cases, Eurostat has done some imputations. This is the case of the imputed housing rental for the owner-occupiers of household dwellings (see Chapter 4 for more details); although most of the countries have done these imputations themselves, a few have preferred that Eurostat did this imputing in their place.

8.3. WEIGHTING OF DATA

The need to weight data from the Household Budget survey is generally recognised. For some variables, double weighting is required:

- Spatial weighting aims to improve the representativeness of the sample in relation to the size, distribution and characteristics of the population under investigation. Methods for calculating coefficients may differ, and here we will look at the gradual approach recommended by Eurostat.
- The temporal weighting of data stems from the fact that the household observation period is often different from the reference period.

The following table summarises the weighting procedures used by each country:

Table 25: Weighting procedures by country ¹⁾

B	On the basis of the representativity of households collaborating, according to the following strata : - region (Flanders, Wallonia and Brussels); - socio-professional category of the reference person; - household size; - age of the reference person and/or number of active in the household.
DK	The sample is post-stratified in order to limit bias among other caused by non-response. The starting point is taken in the register-based information about the concerned address. Among the information taken into account in the weighting process are the total income of the address, the type of ownership of the accommodation, the main income earner's socio-economic grouping, the composition of the household and degree of urbanisation.
D	Weighting measures are derived from (1998) Microcensus figures and from the "Merz method" (Grossing-up procedure).
GR	The sample was self-weighting, e.g. no weightings were applied a posteriori.
E	There is no a posteriori weighting.
F	The final sample is weighted by comparing the household's characteristics (socio-professional category of the reference person, age of the reference person, the household's size, the place of residence and the number of active in the household) with the last Labour Force survey.
IRL	The final sample is compared with the most recent Census of Population or Quarterly National Household Survey (whichever is the most current) and Agricultural Register, and weighted for distribution by household composition, social group, farm size, town size stratum and region.
I	A calibrate estimation by sex and age of population at macro-area level (NUTS1), and by total household and total population at regional level (NUTS2).
L	In order to assess the representativity of the sample, its structure is compared with that of the Population Census carried out 1 March 1991. The control variables are: - the socio-economic category of the reference person; - the household's size; - the occupation status of the accommodation (tenant and owner); - Income category (ECHP). Weighting is only for correction of non-response.
NL	The Household Budget Survey uses the multiplicative weighting method, also known as iterative proportional fit. The following variables are used in the weighting: - net household income; - household size; - sex (in the case of one-person households); - socio-economic group of the main wage earner; - type of housing (rented or owner-occupied). The distribution of these variables in the population is obtained from the statistics on personal income distribution, annual household statistics and the Housing Needs Survey.
A	The survey is weighted with the already weighted Microcensus, using the following variables: region (NUTS 2 level) by 26 reference periods, household type, activity status of the head of household, status employment of the head of household, urbanisation, age and sex.
P	The sample is weighted using the NUTS II regions.
FIN	Weighting and calibration as means to correct for non-response and sampling errors.
S	A post-stratification of the sample is done. For the 1999 survey, a calibration technique was used, to some extent with help of data from other sources.
UK	The grossing applied from 1998-99 onwards is differential and reduces non-response bias. Initial weights are based on a study of non response linked to the 1991 Census. Final weights match population totals by age group and by sex. All weighting/grossing factors are at the household level.
IS	Results are weighted to compensate for non-response and to correct for different sampling probabilities. The weights are sample-based with types of household as weighting classes.
N	In order to correct sample bias, adjustments are made for the non-response. Household groups with a high non-response rate are weighted relatively more in estimating average figures.

(1) Information supplied by the national delegates in the HBS project

CHAPTER 9 TABULATION PLAN

One of the strong points of the Household Budgets survey resides in the diversity of the subjects covered. This makes it possible to make complete studies on the living conditions of households. In its publications Eurostat wishes to use as much as possible this diversity and to draw up as complete a panorama as possible of the standard of living of households in the European Union.

The priority topic remains of course that of 'consumption expenditure' which may be analysed according to several classification variables. But it is also useful to be able to study housing conditions, the level of ownership of consumer durable goods, income and debt of households.

To give an account of these results, Eurostat plans, as from the 1999 round of surveys, to establish tabulation plans and analyses which will have four specific forms:

- a document on paper aiming at a general presentation of the results of the survey for the 15 countries of the EU;
- analyses on specific subjects ('Statistics in Focus');
- the incorporation of the most significant aggregated data in an electronic format (Eurostat's reference data base 'NewCronos');
- other publications. The publication of the series "Panorama of the European Union" titled "Consumers in Europe. Facts and Figures" issued in 2001 was largely based on the HBS data of 1999.

9.1. THE LEVELS OF CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE

Consumption expenditure is an indicator of the standard of living of the households and can be studied both in level and in structure. In level, average expenditure can be analysed according to various classification variables:

- Initially, a simple comparison of average expenditure by country expressed in the various national currencies, in ECU and in purchasing power parities¹⁵ provides a first view of the average standard of living by household and allows comparative analysis of the results obtained in the various countries of the European Union. In order to take account of the size and structure of different households from one country to another, it is also necessary to be able to express this average value not only by household but also by adult equivalent¹⁶.
- In the second place, the expenditure level can be studied within each country according to certain classifications, which aim to demonstrate disparities. The results presented in various tables and according to certain characteristics can partly overlap; for example it is probable that we shall find fairly close average levels for households whose reference person is classified as "retired" and for households where the age of the reference person is in the higher classes. However, in the general publication of results, it appears necessary to provide a rather broad range of results in order for users to carry out the analyses they wish.

¹⁵ The purchasing power parities are conversion factors which makes it possible to eliminate the differences in price levels between countries in order to make volume comparisons.

¹⁶ Eurostat uses different equivalence scales where the most common is the OECD scale where each member is assigned a weight which is 1 for the first adult, 0,7 for other persons of more than 13 years of age and 0,5 for children of 13 years and less. The OECD modified scale will be used for the presentation of 1994 results. This attributes the same coefficient to the first adult (1) but the coefficient for the other members is less (0,5 for each person of more than 13 years and 0,3 for 13 years of age and less).

The variables crossed with the level of consumption expenditure will therefore be:

- (i) *The socio-economic category of the reference person and the economic situation of the household.*
This seeks to measure the influence of activity on the standard of living.
- (ii) *The principal source of the household's income as well as level of income calculated by quintile*
This is probably the variable most closely correlated to consumption level.
In particular the consumption level per item could be compared with the income level notably by calculating cross-elasticity.
- (iii) *The type of household and the age of the reference person*
These two variables will make it possible on the one hand to show the disparities according to the household structure (example: how the consumption expenditure of a single person compares with that of a couple with two children) and on the other hand to study the effect of the life cycle on consumption.
- (iv) *The degree of urbanisation*
The place of dwelling influences consumption insofar as the supply and the consumption habits of goods and services can vary according to whether the household resides in an urban or rural area. Moreover, price levels can differ.

9.2. THE STRUCTURE OF CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE

The study of the consumption expenditure structure aims to determine the share of the total consumption expenditure devoted by a household to a particular type of consumption. It is calculated for each heading as the ratio of the amount of the corresponding consumption to the amount of total consumption.

The structure of consumption expenditure can be presented according to the same characteristics as those indicated previously (activity, income, and type of household). The analysis will thus be able to attempt to show the trade-offs effected by households between the various consumption functions and between the detailed heads of the classification. When the table presents the general structure of consumption expenditure per country, 5-digit level of the COICOP-HBS 1999 nomenclature could be used. On the other hand, when results have a higher level of detail (crossing of the country with one or more variables of household classification), it is better to use a more aggregated level of the COICOP-HBS.

9.3. HOUSEHOLD CHARACTERISTICS

In order to provide the most complete information possible, it is useful to present to the users certain results making it possible to describe the characteristics of the households having taken part in the survey. This aims in particular to facilitate later calculations; for example Community averages, or the shift from average per household data to average per adult equivalent data.

Accordingly, the tables published will aim initially to represent the structure of the sample after weighting according to the characteristics of the activity (socio-economic category of the reference person, economic situation of the household), the type of household, the age of the reference person

and the degree of urbanisation. According to the data available on the individuals, it may also be possible to publish the population structure in terms of persons (activity and age).

Moreover, a number of tables will set out average household size expressed in number of persons and in adult equivalents (using the same classification variables as above).

9.4. SUMMARY: LIST OF TABLES

The following tables are available in the domain HBS of the statistical database of Eurostat “New Cronos”. Information on income, indebtedness, housing and durable goods, present in previous rounds, has been removed from the tabulation plan. The information of the HBS domain is structured in 3 collections, 6 groups and 25 tables as follows:

- 1. Consumption expenditure of private households**
 - 1.1. Global consumption expenditure (mean and medium)
 - t111 Mean consumption expenditure by household and per adult equivalent (EUR, NAC, PPS)
 - 1.2. Consumption expenditure by different characteristics
 - t121 Mean consumption expenditure by detailed COICOP level (in PPS)
 - t123 Mean consumption expenditure per household with an expenditure greater than zero by detailed COICOP level (in PPS)
 - 1.3. Consumption expenditure by a cross variable
 - t131 Mean consumption expenditure by socio-economic category of the reference person (in PPS)
 - t132 Mean consumption expenditure by number of active persons (in PPS)
 - t133 Mean consumption expenditure by income quintile (in PPS)
 - t134 Mean consumption expenditure by type of household (in PPS)
 - t135 Mean consumption expenditure by age of the reference person (in PPS)
 - t136 Mean consumption expenditure by degree of urbanisation (in PPS)
 - t137 Mean consumption expenditure by main source of the household's income (in PPS)
- 2. Structure of mean consumption expenditure**
 - 2.1. Overall structure of consumption expenditure
 - t211 Overall structure of consumption expenditure by detailed COICOP level (per thousand)
 - t212 Estimation of overall structure of consumption expenditure by COICOP level 1 for Phare countries (%)
 - 2.2. Structure of consumption expenditure by a cross variable
 - t221 Structure of consumption expenditure by socio-economic category of the reference person (per thousand)
 - t222 Structure of consumption expenditure by number of active persons (COICOP level 2) (per thousand)
 - t223 Structure of consumption expenditure by income quintile (COICOP level 2) (per thousand)
 - t224 Structure of consumption expenditure by type of household (COICOP level 2) (per thousand)

- t225 Structure of consumption expenditure by age of the reference person (COICOP level 2) (per thousand)
- t226 Structure of consumption expenditure by the degree of urbanisation (COICOP level 2) (per thousand)
- t227 Structure of consumption expenditure by main source of income (COICOP level 2) (per thousand)

3. Household characteristics

- 3.1. Household characteristics by a cross variable
 - t311 Household characteristics by socio-economic category of the reference person
 - t312 Household characteristics by number of active persons
 - t313 Household characteristics by type of household
 - t314 Household characteristics by age of the reference person
 - t315 Household characteristics by urbanisation degree
 - t316 Household characteristics by main source of income

The information available for the Phare countries in table t212 comes from 1998 and presents numerous problems of comparability. There are plans to enlarge, improve and update to 1999 the information for these countries, but this will be documented in a future publication.

ANNEX 1

SURVEY PROFILES OF MEMBER STATES

(The information in this annex has been provided by the national delegates of the Working Group on Household Budget Surveys from the countries concerned)

Belgique / België (B)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: To collect basic data on consumption in relation to certain characteristics of households.

Background: Surveys took place in 1853, 1891, 1910, 1921, 1929, 1957/58, 1961, 1963/64, 1973/74, 1978/79, 1987/88, 1995/96, 1996/97, 1997/98, 1999

Legal basis: There is no formal legal decision to organise the survey; this is not necessary since the selected households are free to collaborate. A Royal Decree of 17 January 1996 fixes the amount of the allowance to the households and another of 10 November 1996 fixes that of the pay to the interviewers.

Uses of the survey: To update the weighting of goods and services for the consumption price index and to provide the data to Eurostat and the Institute of National Accounts. To put the data at the disposal of universities, ministries, research institutions etc.

Users of the survey:

- The Commission responsible for the establishment of the consumer price index.
- Universities.
- Market research.
- Eurostat.
- Institute of National Accounts.

Timing and Frequency:

Frequency: Annual as from 1995. Before 1995 the survey was carried out irregularly.

Reference year used in Eurostat tabulations: 1999 (calendar year)

Sample design:

Sample size (net): The results of the survey 1999 are based on data of 3,745 households.

Sample design: Random (probability sampling)

Stratification: Three criteria of stratification:

- geographical characteristics (regions: Flanders, Wallonia and Brussels)
- five socio-professional categories (reference person): (1) non manual workers, (2) manual workers (3) self-employed persons, (4 and 5) inactive (pensioners or not) combined with 2 age groups (less than 60 and 61 and more)
- household size (1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 or more persons)

Sample representativity: The sample is big enough to obtain reliable data on the expenditure structure of the average household at national and regional levels (Flanders, Wallonia, Brussels)

Sampling frame: Selection of 35 small geographical groups of households each month from the national population register. Each monthly sample is stratified on the basis of a short questionnaire completed by the households when they send their positive response. Surplus households are discarded. Incomplete strata are completed by surplus households in excess in a near stratum.

Response rate: 9.93 % but the HBS is coupled (in 1999) to a Time Use Survey.

Substitution: A household abandoning in the course of the month of survey is not replaced by another.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households having a residence on the national territory whatever their nationality. Regions have a different sampling rate to allow sufficient precision at regional level (Brussels is oversampled).

Definition of household: One or more person(s) with or without family ties, occupying the same housing unit and living together on the Belgian territory (collective households are not included). Thus, members of a household are persons, whether related or not, living in the same dwelling and sharing at least part of the social life and the meals. Temporarily absent persons, such as children at boarding school or persons in hospitals, are included (except if they are absent during the whole month of survey). Visitors are excluded.

Reference person: In theory, the person who contributes most to the household's financial resources. In practice, no changes are now made.

Child-adult definition: Persons over 12 years old complete an individual questionnaire (education, labour, personal income...)

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: In the 1999 survey, Belgium used a concept similar to that of consumption:

- the households are questioned concerning the consumption of internal production as far as this involves agricultural production;
- the benefits in kind received from the employer or a social aid organism are recorded;
- the imputed rent is considered for the owner's principal residence (including an estimate for rent-free accommodation) taking into account the comfort level, the location, the number of rooms and the type of housing;
- instalment purchases are recorded at cash price at the time of acquisition.

Household diary. A single diary is used:

diary for a period of a month registering all expenditure in detail as well as, at least in theory, all income and savings and debt transactions.

Interview: (single interview)

Interview at the end of the survey period, covering the following subjects:

- **Individual questionnaire:** characteristics of the household members, their activity, age, education followed, etc.
- **Household questionnaire:** periodic payments, housing characteristics, possession of amenities and durables, rental value of owner-occupied accommodation, charges paid in relation to housing, detail of combined invoices (water, electricity, gas...), retrospective questions for durable expenditure (month of survey and 3 months before).

Variables: The Belgian survey covers all the essential variables. Food quantities are measured but not exploited (control variable).

Nomenclature: Expenditure is recorded by using a national classification developed by the Belgian Statistical Institute. The results are converted into COICOP-HBS (4 digits) by the Belgian Statistical Institute and sent to Eurostat.

Classification(s): Socio-professional groups are coded in 2 levels giving information on persons in private or public employment or inactive, in training, etc.

Reference periods: Expenditure is recorded during 1 month. Retrospective period (durable expenditure) is 4 months (included month of survey).

Treatment of data

Weighting: **On the basis of the representativity of households collaborating, according to the following strata:**

- region (Flanders, Wallonia and Brussels);
- socio-professional category of the reference person;
- household size;
- age of the reference person and/or number of active in the household.

Grossing up: **On the basis of the results of the 1991 Census (actualised by national population register) and the results of the Labour Force Survey 1999.**

Processing data: **Data are processed in the 5 statistical centers (Antwerp, Brussels, Charleroi, Gent and Liege).**

Control procedures: **Control of the housing expenditure (separate grouped variables)**
Control of balance between income and expenditure
Control of coherence between diary and questionnaires
Controls to avoid duplication, oversights, etc

Production time: **For a survey year n: the results are available at the end of year n+1.**

Coherence with other statistics: **Tests comparing with income tax statistics.**

Types of dissemination: **Paper and electronic publications.**

Planned changes of the survey:

In future, retrospective period for durable expenditure will be extended to a year. Detailed expenditure for second residence will be asked. New weighting method is currently testing.

Danmark (DK):

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The aim of the survey is to analyse the way in which households use their income.

Background: The survey can be dated back more than 100 years. From 1976 and onwards the survey has covered all types of private households; previously it only covered certain groups of wage earners.

Uses of survey: The results of the survey are used as one of the inputs to calculate the Consumer Price Index and to establish the national accounts. They are used for different public and private planning purposes. The survey also furnishes data needed for market research studies and for the comparative study of living conditions of different social groups.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: The survey has become annually starting in 1994. Formerly the survey took place approximately every five years.

Reference year: The sample used for the Eurostat comparative tabulations is a cumulation of the 1997, 1998 and 1999 samples. All prices etc. are recalculated using 1998 as the reference year.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 2727 households.

Sample design: The sample is selected randomly in certain geographical clusters spread in a reasonable way over the country but concretely decided upon by using the living area of the interviewer in order to limit costs of transport. The quarterly selected sample (375 addresses) is selected independently of earlier selections.

Stratification: The sample is selected in one stage, stratified in geographical regions.

Sample representativeness: At national level.

Sampling frame: Central Population register. The register is up-dated continuously. Addresses with no inhabitants and with more than 8 persons are discarded (the latter to minimise the risk of choosing institutions).

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the address. If more households are found to be living on an address, they should all be included in the survey. Survey units are the household and for some variables the individual member.

Response rate: 61.8% (1997/1999 survey). Great efforts have been made to minimise non-responses in the survey. Among others the initiatives are: - a new timing of the survey, - reduction in the burden of participation, - smaller numbers of interviewers, - better trained interviewers, - better introductory material to households, more easy-to-understand instructions, new incentives to the household and a better way of making the first contact.

Substitution is not allowed.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: All private households with residence in Denmark except Greenland and the Faroe Islands.

Definition of household: The household in the economic sense - a person living alone or a group of people living together and sharing income and outlays.

Members of a household: In order to be included as a member of the household, the person has to have his/her permanent living arrangement at the address and share income and expenses with the household.

Reference person: The person in the household who has the largest gross taxable income.

Child-adult definition: Children are below 18 years of age. The data material gives scope for using other definitions.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The information from the Danish survey can be approached to both an expenditure and consumption approach. Imputed rent is calculated. Consumption of own production is evaluated if the amount concerned is more than 1000 DKr and if it is linked to a professional activity.

The number of benefits in kind evaluated has been reduced but housing, company car and a free telephone and certain other components are evaluated. Hire purchases are recorded at cash price at the moment of taking possession.

Household diary: The intensive diary keeping of daily expenses takes place over a 14 days period starting the day after the first visit of the interviewer. Two diaries exist, the household diary and an individual voluntary diary for personal expenses. The diaries are open-ended. The household is asked to give a description of the good, the amount paid, for food, if it is fresh, frozen, tinned or otherwise, for clothes: the sex and the age of the person concerned and if the good has been bought abroad. Space is left for comments.

Interview(s): One questionnaire exists. The interview is divided into two parts: the 'easiest' questions are treated just before the start of the diary keeping period and the final interview happens just after the household has finished the diary keeping period. The interviewer collects the diaries at the same time as the last interview is done. The interview covers items as background information about the household, fixed expenditures, bigger purchases of single goods, ownership of durable goods, information about pensions and the use of public services (concerning health, education and child-care).

Variables: The Danish survey covers all important variables found in the Eurostat comparative tabulation plan.

Nomenclature: The Danish nomenclature on functions contains more than 1000 positions in six levels. The system is constructed in close agreement with COICOP-HBS.

Reference periods: A retrospective reference period of twelve months is used starting from the day of the first interview.

Treatment of data:

Weighting: The sample is post-stratified in order to limit bias including that caused by non-response. The starting point is taken in the register-based information about the address concerned. Among the information taken into account in the weighting process are the total income of the address, the type of ownership of the accommodation, the main income earner's socio-economic grouping, the composition of the household and degree of urbanisation.

Grossing up: The survey population is raised using register-based information about how many households exist in Denmark in the different strata.

Processing data: The interview is done via CAPI using the software BLAISE. Putting the interview on CAPI has had the effect of preventing partial non-response. The coding and controls of mistakes in the diaries take place centrally using BLAISE. ORACLE is used for the administration of the sample selection and other technical details. Statistical calculations are done via SAS.

Control procedures: Controls implemented at the interview phase, checks via register data and by making probability intervals.

Types of statistical measures: No sampling errors are calculated.

Production time: It takes approximately 10 months from receiving the last data from the households (in the last year of the survey) to the publication. The last register information is extracted 3 months before publication. Because of the use of cumulating more years, it takes approximately 2 years from the end of the reference year to the publication of data.

Use of registers: Information is collected from registers, notably on income, accommodation, education, taxes, employment/unemployment and occupation.

Coherence with other statistics: On the macro level comparisons are done with national accounts estimates.

Forms of dissemination: Detailed results are published in 'Statistiske Efterretninger' (Statistical Information). Selected data are transferred to the database, www.statistikbanken.dk, of Statistics Denmark. Detailed individual computations are made for fixed prices. Statistics Denmark does not allow any dissemination of micro-data.

Planned changes of the survey:

There are no further plans for major revisions.

Deutschland (D)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The purpose of the income and consumption sample surveys (EVS) is to provide representative statistical data on the composition of private households, their socio-economic status, their income by source, and expenditure by type and purpose. Details are also recorded of household appliances (high-quality consumer durables), housing and of assets and debts.

Background: Since 1962-63 the EVS has generally been conducted every five years. For the first time in 1993, the survey was carried out in all 16 federal states of the Federal Republic of Germany. For 1998 the EVS was redesigned.

Legal base: The legal base of the EVS is the law on statistics of family budget surveys as published in adjusted version in the Federal Gazette (BGBl.), part III, number 708-6, last amended by Article 2 of the ordinance of 26 March 1991 (BGBl. I, p 846), in combination with the Law on Statistics for Federal Purposes (BStatG) of 22 January 1987, last amended by Article 2 of the law of 17 January 1996 (BGBl., part I, p. 34).

Uses of the survey: The survey meets a wide range of needs. The data forms an official source for the weighting schemes used in the consumer price index and is an important source of data for compiling national accounts. It is also used for studies in distribution of income and wealth, and it serves as a base for socio-political decisions such as determining social security benefits. Additionally, it provides important data for studies of the population's consumption patterns and living standards.

Users of the survey: The most important users, other than in-house departments, are prices statisticians, national accountants and Eurostat, as well as government authorities (e.g. ministries), the Bundesbank, universities and economic/socio-political research institutes. Survey results are also requested by a large number of enterprises, trade unions, other non-profit organisations and private individuals.

Timing and Frequency:

Frequency: Every fifth year.

Reference year: 1998 .

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 68,863 households (usable) participated in the introductory survey in 1998, while the number was 62,150 (usable) at the end of the reporting period. Selection of a 20 percent subsample (monthly rotating) prior to the survey identified households that were to give detailed information on the consumption of food, beverages and tobacco. In 1998, a total of 12,939 (usable; on average: 1,078 per month) such households were evaluated.

Sample design: Quota sample, e.g. the sample is not based on probability selection procedures. The sampling unit is the household. The survey covers all private households, except persons without fixed abode (homeless), persons living in institutional or collective accommodation and households with a monthly net income of DM 35,000 or more. The households are recruited by the statistical offices of the Länder and the Federal Statistical Office on the basis of a quota plan set up by the Federal Statistical Office. The sample is drawn in a single stage in accordance with detailed quotas determined on the basis of the previous (1997) Microcensus which is an annual survey based on a 1%

probability sample (selection units are regional clusters; the sampling units - households and persons - are selected by a random route procedure).

Stratification: For each of the 16 regional groups (Länder), the sample is stratified by the characteristics 'household type', 'monthly household net income' and 'social status of the main income earner'.

Sample representativeness: The survey provides representative results for all private households resident in the Federal Republic of Germany, with the exceptions mentioned under 'sample design'. For a regional breakdown, results are also compiled at Länder level.

Sampling frame: Microcensus 1997 (for sampling plan) and 1998 (for weighting and grossing up).

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the household. The household and for certain questions the individual members are used as survey (enumeration) units.

Response rate: The quota sampling implies that calculating response rates in the usual sense does not apply. Certain quota are more difficult to fulfil than others, a general problem that often occurs for those quota which refer to units belonging to the distribution margins.

Substitution: There is some substitution of missing units (households) at the beginning, but not during the reporting year.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: All private households with their residence in the national territory, with the exceptions mentioned under 'sample design'.

Definition of household: A household is a group of persons with family or personal links with each other, which forms a unit in terms of to both income and consumption. The members of the household share one or several incomes and satisfy their needs from a common budget.

Members of a household: The following categories of persons are not included in the household:

- long-term absentees e.g. students and persons doing their military service,
- visitors,
- resident employees and
- domestic servants .

Reference person: The reference person is called 'main income earner', it is the person who contributes most to the household net income.

Child-adult definition: Children are defined as unmarried children below 18 years of age, and as children of the highest income earner (head of household) or his/her spouse/partner.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The German survey follows a consumption approach:

- Own production and benefits in kind are evaluated using estimated retail prices.
- In some cases, households with self-employed persons give the portion of headings containing business expenditure which is used as a basis for estimating private consumption (maximum 40 headings).

- For owner-occupied dwellings (household's main residence), imputed rents are determined. These are based on average prices per m² paid by tenant households broken down by region, age of building and quality of accommodation.

Interview(s): One introductory interview is conducted at the beginning of the year. This interview is carried out by personal contact (interviewer) or by post. It contains questions on household characteristics such as occupation, education, income, housing, real estate and equipment with consumer durables. It also includes information on the members of the household.

Household diary: Two types of survey diaries are used - the "household diary" and a "detailed log book". (There is also a "collective diary", but it contrast to the other diaries it only serves as a supporting tool for the participating household.)

Each household diary covers a total of three months. Each household included in the sample must fill in one household diary. These contain details of income and receipts by source and recipient (including income in kind), living costs, electricity and heating etc., clothing, furniture and other consumer durables, leisure, health, transport, insurance, taxes etc. Details are also recorded of savings and the repayment of debts including interest, as well as any assets. The income and selected expenditure shown in the household diary are entered for each one out of the three months.

In addition to the household diary, some households (subsample of some 20%; see also 'Sample size') keep a detailed log book for one month (out of their three months). These books are used to record details of expenditure on food, beverages and tobacco, including consumption outside the home. That data are used to supplement the information received by the household diaries.

Variables: The survey covers all important variables of a household budget survey and is moreover very detailed as regards income sources and assets of the household.

Nomenclature: Classification of income and expenditure is based on a preliminary version of the 1998 SEA (classification of income and expenditures of private households). It follows the definitions used in the national accounts. The private consumption part of SEA is derived from the COICOP classification.

Reference periods: The survey year is the reference year.

Treatment of data:

Weighting: Weighting measures are derived from (1998) Microcensus figures and from the "Merz method" (see 'Grossing up').

Grossing up: In a first step, a grossing up factor is determined for each household in a stratum. It is calculated as follows:

Number of microcensus households per stratum, divided by Number of EVS households per stratum for which usable results are available.

All household characteristics are raised to the entire population of households in a stratum of the basic population using this extrapolation factor. This procedure is also used to gross up data on food, drink and tobacco. However, allowance is made for rotation and for the fact that data from the detailed log book refer to a subsample. In a second step, the so-evaluated factors are re-adjusted in the sense of obtaining "individual" factors (by considering also the unit-related characteristics of the tabular program). The whole procedure is called "Grossing up by using the principle of minimum information loss".

Processing data: Data were processed centrally by the Federal Statistical Office. Processing was done using mainframes. Data from the 1998 survey were input checked on a dialogue basis.

Control procedures: In the Länder statistical offices, the contents of the survey documents are checked for completeness and a rough pre-plausibility check is made. Comprehensive plausibility checks are carried out by the Federal Statistical Office after receipt of the survey documents by the Länder.

Types of statistical measures: Results are published as both absolute values and percentages. Statistical quality treatment is limited to calculating but not publishing the values for relative standard errors and coefficients of variation. For results to be published, tabular fields with a minimum of 100 or more enumerated households are assumed to be statistically significant (relative standard error less than 10%), the corresponding values are published as they are. Tabular fields with 25 to 100 households are assumed to be of restricted representativity (relative standard error in the range of 10% to 20%), the corresponding values are published between parentheses '()'. Tabular fields with fewer than 25 households mean that results are no longer deemed to be representative, as they may show a relative standard error of over 20%, their values are not published but substituted by '!'.

Production time: Production time varies according to type of survey document (introductory interview, diary, detailed log-book) and also depends on (preliminary or final) the status of the published data. First data on long durables, assets and debts were published in 1998. First selected data on income and expenditure were published in November 1999. The last published (final) data were those on food, beverages and tobacco in February 2002.

Use of registers: No use of registers.

Coherence with other statistics: As EVS methods and definitions are not entirely compatible with National Accounts, discrepancies in the results of the two surveys usually occur.

Forms of dissemination: The Federal Statistical Office publishes the data in a number of statistical volumes. On request, statistical results are also prepared as individual tables and data in paper or electronic form. Scientific users are provided with micro-datafiles on demand.

Planned changes of the survey:

From January 1999 on, a continuous survey (quarterly rotating) with about 6,000 households is carried out (New LWR), with the intention of harmonising EVS and LWR by content and so supplementing the EVS by the New LWR in "non-EVS-years".

Hellas (EL)

Methodology 1998/99:

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: Revision of the Consumer Price Index

Background: The 1998/99 (November 1998 - October 1999) Household Budget Survey (HBS) is the seventh survey conducted in Greece on a sample of 6,258 households selected from the total households in Greece. The first Household Budget Survey was conducted by the NSSG during the interval April 1957 - March 1958, on a sample of 2,500 households over the total households of the urban areas in the country. The results obtained formed the base for the compilation from the NSSG of the Consumer Price Index. The survey was also conducted in the following year, but in a smaller scale (in a smaller sample of households, over the total households of the cities with 30,000 inhabitants and over). During the interval May 1963 - April 1964, the NSSG conducted a wide sample survey in the semi-urban and rural areas, simultaneously with the survey conducted in the urban areas. 3,755 households were surveyed out of the total households in those areas. The Household Budget Surveys were conducted during the years 1974, 1981/82, 1987/88 and 1993/94 on a sample of 7,424, 6,035, 6,489 and 6,756 households, respectively.

Legal basis: The Household Budget Survey is conducted in accordance with the Joint Decision by the Ministers for Economic Affairs and Finance.

Uses of survey: The survey is used for:

- revising the Consumer Price Index;
- supplementing existing statistical data for estimating total private consumption;
- investigating the amount and structure of household expenditure in relation to household income, and in relation to other economic, social and demographic characteristics of households;
- investigating changes in the standard of living of households in relation to previous surveys;
- investigating the link between household purchases and income in kind;
- investigating low-income thresholds by socio-economic category and population group.

Users of the survey: The main users are universities, research centres, research companies, ministries, private individuals and Eurostat.

Timing and Frequency:

Frequency: Since 1982, the survey has been carried out in 1981/82, 1987/1998, 1993/1994 and 1998/99.

Reference year: November 1998- October 1999

Sample design:

Sample size: 6,258 households.

Sample design: Probability sample. The method applied was a two-stage stratified sampling with a single general fraction of 2/1000 for the year as a whole.

Stratification: The design was based on the 13 Regional Districts Development (RDO). Every RDO was divided with criterion the degree of urbanization of the municipalities

and communes, to 8 main strata (1991 census). Specifically Athens and Thessaloniki were divided in 40 and 10 major strata, respectively.

In all strata, two-stage sampling was employed, with:

- the housing block or group of continuous housing blocks (area unit) as the primary unit, and
- the dwelling as the secondary - final unit.

A total of 518 municipalities and communes were included in the survey, whilst the number of area units came to 1,184.

Sample representativeness: On NUTS II level.

Sampling frame: Census of population 1991.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit was the dwelling, the enumeration unit the household.

Response rate:

The sample was 7,959 households. From these 1,619 were empty dwellings, secondary and professional dwellings. The remaining 6,340 dwellings included two 2- household dwellings giving 6,344 households in total.

Of these 6,344 households, 86 households were not interviewed as not available or because they ended the cooperation. The total response rate was 98.64%.

From the resulting 6,258 households, 1,975 (31.56%) were substituted due to refusal or temporary absence or due to the fact that it was not possible to contact them and were interviewed with the remaining 4,283 (68.44%) .

Substitution: Most of the households were substituted if co-operation with the household was impossible for the following reasons:

- unable to contact,
- refusal to cooperate
- Temporary absence.

The response rates after substitution is **98%**.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: The survey covered all the private households throughout the country, irrespective of their size or socio-economic characteristics. The following were excluded from the survey:

- institutional households of all types;
- households with more than three lodgers;
- Households with foreign nationals serving in foreign diplomatic missions.

The households with members not speaking the Greek language (*ex posteriori*)

Definition of the household: A household is defined as one person living alone (single-person household) in a dwelling, or a group of persons, whether or not related (multi-person household) occupying the same dwelling, with common housekeeping and generally eating together.

Persons living in the same dwelling but with no common housekeeping and not eating together were deemed to be separate households provided each person had the exclusive use of one room.

Members of the household: Members of the household are persons living together and, as a rule, taking meals together.

Household members present were considered to be:

- persons, whether or not related, living together on a permanent basis,
- guests of the household, whether or not related, staying for more than one month, *during the whole survey period-14 days*,
- persons who belonged to the household, but who, at the time of the survey, were absent definitively or for an extended period of time (*more than one month*), for various reasons, (a) *under the condition that they did not move to another private household, within Greece*, (b) *that it was possible to provide a detailed record of their personal expenditures for at least eight days*;
- persons who were present in the household, but who, at the time of the survey-after the 8th day, left definitively or for an extended period of time (more than one month), for various reasons, (a) *under the condition that they did not move to another private household, within Greece*, (b) *that it was possible to provide a detailed record of their personal expenditures for at least eight days*;
- Persons who came in the household, at the time of the survey, for a period of time more than one month or permanently under the condition that it was possible to provide a detailed record of their personal expenditure for at least eight days.

Household members absent but included in the household:

- persons, whether or not related, who were normally resident in the household, but who were temporarily absent at the time of the survey for a period of less than a month or the entire duration of the survey or part thereof, provided it was possible to record (or estimate) their personal expenditure (employees on business trips, drivers of long-distance buses or trucks, sailors working on domestic or overseas lines, reserve officers or soldiers, etc.).

Reference person: As reference person we considered (the same definition was used in the previous survey):

- The head of the household, if he/she is economically active (having or searching for a job). When the head of the household is neither working nor looking for work, for him/her to be considered as reference person, there should not be any other economically active person in the household.
- The spouse of partner of the head if he/she is working or looking for a job, if the person declared as head is not economically active.
- The oldest economically active member of the household, being, if the head's spouse/partner is not economically active.
- The head of the household if no-one else in the household is economically active.

Child-adult definition: Personal expenditure diaries are filled in by persons of 14 years of age or older.

Survey content:

Consumption/expenditure approach:

The Greek survey follows a consumption approach. Own production and benefits in kind are measured and evaluated at retail price. Imputed rents are calculated for the principal residences owned, for residences free of rent and for secondary residences occupied by the owner. Hire-purchases are recorded at cash price at the time of taking possession.

Household diary: The questionnaire consists of the following two basic forms:

The Family Expenditure Form (HBS 1) recording information on the household as:

- characteristics of household members;
- housing characteristics and expenditure;
- the various types of regular and extraordinary expenditure (education, medical and hospital treatment, contributions, subscriptions);
- expenditure on means of transport
- expenditure on main types of household equipment (furniture, floor coverings, electrical and other household appliances, plus repair thereof), items for recreational use, bulk purchase of food, etc.;
- expenditure on items of personal and household use, e.g. clothing and footwear, furnishings and bedding, household goods and tools, etc.;
- expenditure on food, drinks, other goods for immediate consumption and miscellaneous services;
- expenditure on holidays;
- value of goods for estimating own production and benefits in kind.

Daily personal expenditure and income of members of household aged > 14 years old (Form HBS 2):

The HBS 2 was used to record personal expenditure by the enumerated household member on each of the 14 days of the survey, regardless of whether the expenditure was made to cover his or her own needs or those of other members of the household.

Daily personal expenditure of members of household aged 14 7 = years old (Form HBS 3): The HBS 3 was used to record personal expenditure by the enumerated household member on each of the 14 days of the survey, regardless of whether the expenditure was made to cover his or her own needs or those of other members of the household.

Interview: Data were collected by face-to-face interview. Enumerators visited the selected households on 14 consecutive days.

In order to complete the forms, enumerators followed the procedure described below:

Day one:

- secured the co-operation of the households that had been selected;
- completed part A of HBS1 (composition of the household and employment status of its members);
- distributed the special “diaries” for recording daily expenditure by the households over the next 14 days;

The next fortnight:

- gradually completed expenditure for sections B to H of form HBS1;
- carried out daily checks on any mistakes or oversights in the expenditure recorded by the household members in the special “diaries” and entered them accordingly in HBS1, HBS 2 and HBS3.

Day 15:

Completed section B of HBS2 (income of members of household) and HBS3 (head of household’s opinion about the household’s economic situation).

Variables: Almost all the variables used to compile the European Union’s comparative tables are covered.

Nomenclature: The nomenclature used for the 1998-99 survey is the COICOP-HBS.

Classifications: STAKOD 91 and STEP 92 (use was made of the single-digit breakdown, which is identical to NACE Rev. 1 and ISCO 88).

Reference periods: In order to reduce sampling errors and difficulties in recalling the relevant details, various reference periods were used during the survey. These were determined according to the frequency of the types of expenditure incurred by the households.

The reference periods (seven) were as follows:

The 14 days of the survey for daily expenditure on:

- food;
- cleaning/personal hygiene products;
- pharmaceutical products;
- Personal expenditure by members of the household.

Reference periods of a month, two months, three months, four months, six months or year for payments made at regular intervals for services provided or to be provided in the future, e.g.:

- electricity, water, phone bills, communal charges, etc.;
- road tax and car insurance;
- rent for the main or second dwelling, or holiday home.

Reference periods of 30 days, 6 months or a year prior to the end of the household survey (including the 14 days of the survey) for:

- Expenditure on items of clothing and footwear, medical appliances, etc.);
- expenditure on furniture, electrical goods, etc.;
- Income from services paid for, liberal professions, agricultural and livestock undertakings, etc.

Treatment of data:

Weighting: The sample was self-weighting, e.g. no weightings were applied *a posteriori*.

Grossing up: Data are not grossed up.

Processing of data: The data from the questionnaire were transferred to magnetic media and mechanical checks were carried out.

Control procedures: The questionnaires were checked in three stages, for the completeness and logical consistency of the data collected, and their correct entry.

The officials in charge of the checks, in accordance with the enumerator guidelines and other objective facts, correlated the data both within questionnaires and with the data contained in the questionnaires for other households in the same region in order to verify that the answers given were correct. Mistakes were corrected, and any unclear answers explained, in conjunction with the enumerator or the enumerated household.

Types of statistical measures: Standard variations are calculated for the main monthly average expenditure of households (approximately for 100 items.) All non-sampling errors are believed to be within acceptable limits, as the necessary steps were taken during all stages of the survey to ensure that such errors were kept to a minimum. Nevertheless, there are clear indications that certain types of expenditure are seriously underestimated, this being attributable to the fact that inaccurate information was supplied, particularly in the case of expenditure of a personal nature.

Production time: *One year* (November 1999 - October 2000)

Use of registers: No register information is used

Links with other statistics: The demographic and social characteristics were compared with the 1991 Census, Labour Force Survey and European Community Household Panel.

Forms of dissemination: The NSSG publishes the data in the volume "Household Expenditure Survey 1998/99", tables on Diskettes, source material in electronic form and print-out of tables.

Planned changes to the survey:

Development of variables on food items, durable, detailed information about number of visits to the doctor, type of outlet etc.

España (E)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The aims of the continuous household budget survey are to:

- estimate quarterly consumption expenditure, broken down by Autonomous Communities and by the 1st level of COICOP-HBS (functions), as well as in relation to some classification variables of the household or its main sustainer;
- estimate the change of consumption expenditure broken down by Autonomous Communities and functions with regard to the same quarter of the previous year.
- estimate annual consumption expenditure, broken down by Autonomous Communities and by the 3rd level of COICOP-HBS (four digits);
- estimate quarterly and annual consumption of food and beverages measured in physical quantities.

Background: The forerunners of the continuous HBS set up in 1997 were the continuous HBS from 1985 to the first quarter of 1997 and the Ongoing Survey of Consumption (EPC) which was conducted quarterly from 1977 until 1983. The first basic survey was held in 1958, followed by those of 1964/65, 1980/81 and 1990/91.

Legal base: Laws 12/1989 on Public Statistics and Laws 4/1990 and 13/1996 establish the rules of conduct for the National Statistical Institute in all its surveys. Since 1997 the Household Budget survey is obligatory.

Uses of the survey: Calculation of the final consumption of households in the national accounts, weightings for the Consumer Price Index and studies on the living conditions of Spanish households.

Users of the survey: Basically universities, research centres, other public bodies and enterprises. The statistical institute in Spain (INE) is using the survey results for further treatment in national accounts and in the consumer price index.

Timing and Frequency:

Frequency: The continuous household budget survey is quarterly.

Reference year: For the Eurostat tabulation, the data used are basically those from the quarterly continuous survey, for four quarters; where the bulk of the households was in 1998.

Sample design:

Sample size: For the continuous survey, the annual sample size is 9, 891 households.

Sample design: A random sample is used. The sample design is two-stage with stratification of the units in the first stage. The units in the first stage correspond to the census districts, whilst those in the second stage are the main family dwellings.

Stratification: The stratification of the census districts firstly used a geographical criterion according to the size of municipality the district belonged to and then according to the socio-demographic characteristics of that district (obtained from the latest census data). The survey has been carried out within each 'Comunidad Autonoma'.

Sample representativeness: Spain.

Sampling frame: The 1991 population census updated with inclusion of new dwellings.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the dwelling.

Response rates: Aprox. 65% first collaboration of the households and 85% the following collaborations.

Substitution: Substitutions are used for dwellings which are empty, unlocatable, inaccessible or intended for purposes other than that of the main family dwelling. In the information sent to Eurostat (whose reference period is 1998), households which refuse to cooperate on either of their collaborations and those which are absent during a quarter are substituted (except in seven or eight collaboration). However, this last rule has changed now, in the way that a household is substituted only if it is absent during two consecutive quarters.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: All private households living in the national territory (there is no over-sampling).

Definition of household: A household is considered as one or more persons occupying the same main family dwelling or a part of it, and consuming and/or sharing food and other goods paid from the same budget.

Members of the household: Persons who are economically dependent on the selected household (same budget, at least partially) and usually live in the same dwelling. The following categories are not members of the household: domestic servants, paying guests and persons who left the household for good before the first day of the survey. Residents temporarily away are considered as members of the household provided that they retain an economic link with the rest of the household.

Reference person: The reference person is defined as the member of the household whose regular (not occasional) contribution to the common household budget is intended to meet a greater proportion of the household expenditure than the contributions made by the other members.

Child-adult definition: In the continuous survey, a child is a person aged under 16.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: Self-evaluation by the household is the method used to measure the household's own output (consumption of own production, benefits in kind). This is done for all goods and services according to the COICOP-HBS classification. With regard to rent, an amount is imputed for main or secondary dwellings, both for owner-occupation and in cases where the dwelling is let free of charge. The method adopted is own assessment by the household.

Household diary: An open-ended diary is completed for one week by the person responsible for running the household, and includes consumption of own production and benefits in kind. The separate individual diaries of expenses should also be completed for the same week: one for all members of the household aged 14 and over. This diary includes the expenditures which are not recorded in the household diary. Another for the domestic services and a last one for children between 7 and 13 years old (optional).

Interviews: There are three visits to the household during the recording week: the first is to deliver the diaries of expenses (household and individual), identify the members of the household and the head of household, and to obtain certain data on them. During the following visit the expenditure questionnaire is completed on expenses for reference periods longer than one week by means of interviews with the household and by reading off possible expenditure from a closed list. In addition to checking how the diaries are being kept, a questionnaire is also filled in during these visits with various data on the household.

The final visit is to conclude the recording of household data, and to check all the documentation.

Variables: The following variables are covered:

- for all the members of the household: age, sex, legal marital status, relation with the main sustainer, activity situation (current and usual);
- for the main sustainer: also professional situation, occupation, establishment activity, sector of activity, educational level, type of health coverage;
- for the household as a whole: type of income received, main source of income, current regular monetary income, subjective economic situation module;
- for the main dwelling: form of tenure, type of building, number of rooms, useful living surface, amenities, durables;
- for some food, beverages and tobacco (codes 01 and 02) and for fuels and lubricants (code 07221) physical quantities are collected.

Data are collected on income of each member of the household. Quantity information of group 1 goods (food, drink and tobacco) is also collected.

Nomenclature: Five digit (four level) COICOP-HBS 97 split by INE, 289 codes.

Classifications:

Spanish version of ISCO-88 (CNO-94) for occupations, Spanish version of NACE Rev 1 (CNAE-93) for activity of the establishment.

Reference periods: The periods used in the continuous survey are:

- one week for frequently purchased goods and services
- one month for less frequently purchased goods and services and, in general, good and services with a price with a price of 20,000-50,000 ESP (except quarterly goods and services)
- one quarter for rarely purchased good and services and also, in general, goods and services with a price above 50,000 ESP.

Data treatment:

Weightings: There is no *a posteriori* weighting.

Grossing up: For the grossing up, each sample household in each region ('Comunidad Autonoma') and stratum is allocated the quotient of the estimated total population (taken from censuses and population projections) and the sample population, derived from this same total. Corrections for missing answers are also taken into account in the sub-stratum.

Data processing: The data are collected by means of questionnaires and, after a manual check at the INE's regional offices, are recorded centrally.

Control procedures: Tests are carried out on the consistency and coherence of the variables and confidence intervals are computed for values, quantities and prices. Where necessary, the amounts are imputed. For variables, which do not deal with expenditure or income, the statistical institute's DIA program was used to detect and impute errors in these sections.

Types of statistical measure: Absolute and relative results are published according to different variables. Standard variations are published for the main expenditure groups.

Production time: It takes approximately two and a half months from the end of the quarter until advance results are obtained. Definitive results for the year 1998 were published at mid-2000.

Coherence with other statistics: Internal consistency checks are carried out with the Labour Force Survey, national accounts and the European Community Household Panel.

Forms of dissemination: The statistical institute (INE) publishes a methodological manual for the survey as well as several volumes of results. Advanced quarterly results, definitive quarterly and annual results are published electronically (diskette and Internet). Users can also obtain files which have been rendered anonymous and contain all the information available in the surveys at micro level.

Planned changes to the survey:

Income at the individual level has been introduced in the survey in 2002. Methodological change in 2006.

France (F)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The objective of the 1994-95 survey is to measure, as precisely as possible, expenditure, consumption and resources of a sample of households.

Background: The first survey on households' living conditions was carried out in 1956. The survey was carried out again in 1963, then became annual from 1965 until 1972. In 1973-74 INSEE modified the survey structure by combining it with the food survey. This restructuring had a negative effect on the quality of the results, and it was decided to conduct household budget surveys every 5 years as from 1978-79.

Legal basis: There is no legal basis specifically for the survey in France but two general laws cover:

- the statistical law governing all surveys (Law No 51-711 of 7-6-1951 on the obligation and confidentiality as regards statistics),
- the law guaranteeing individuals a right of access for information on their personal files (Law No 78-17 of 6-01-1978 concerning information technology, files and freedoms).

As for any other household survey, the Household Budget Survey is reviewed by a Quality Committee, which is also competent to declare a survey mandatory.

Participation in the survey is mandatory for the household.

Uses of the survey: The principal uses of the survey are:

- for the weighting of the consumer price index;
- for national accounts;
- for socio-economic studies, for example studies on income, poverty, inequality, or studies on specific population groups and, more generally, numerous studies on consumption and the standard of living.

Users of the survey: INSEE (various divisions), INRA (Observatory of Food Consumption), Ministry of Housing, 'Commissariat Général au Plan', companies, marketing consultancies, research institutes, universities, etc.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Irregular: approximately every 5 years.

Reference year: May 2000 – April 2001.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 20, 000 households in metropolitan France, plus 5 000 in overseas departments (French West Indies, French Guyana and Ile de la Réunion).

Sample design: Probability sampling.

Stratification: Stratification is in two phases. First, a detailed stratification is established taking account of geographical and socio-economic characteristics. At the second stage dwellings are selected.

Sample representativeness: Except for rural areas, regional representativity is well ensured. In other words, for the major and average agglomerations, results are representative at regional level.

Sampling frame: The sample is selected from a list based on the 1990 Census and updated by new constructions.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the dwelling. Households and individuals are enumeration units.

Response rate: 62%; substitution is not allowed. This response rate is the ratio between the number of accepted surveys and the initial sample.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households on the national territory, oversampling of the Overseas Departments (DOM). Overseas Territories (TOM) are not included.

Definition of the household: All the occupants of a single private permanent dwelling, used as a principal residence, whatever their links with the owner or the tenant of the accommodation are.

Members of a household: Visitors are excluded. All other members are included, for example the resident employees, tenants, residents temporarily absent and persons absent for a long period such as students and long-term patients residing at a hospital.

Reference person: Several successive criteria are used:

- if it is a household with a couple, the man is the reference person;
- if it is a household without a couple, it is the parent or the employed person or the oldest member who is appointed as the reference person.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The French survey can adopt various definitions (in particular the consumption expenditure) in function of the users or of the needs of analysis.

The 2000/01 survey records certain consumption expenditures in accordance with Eurostat's recommendations:

- own production of food,
- principal benefits in kind, e.g. a car,
- housing, - the data that are necessary to estimate an imputed rent for owner-occupied accommodation or households living free of charge are collected,

'Free' expenditure paid by the employer (electricity, gas and telephone) are also taken into account.

- **Household diary:** Diaries are kept for 14 days, they are open in nature. Households can choose to insert their till receipts received from the supermarket rather than writing down the list of all their purchases. It is requested that each household member aged 14 or over keeps an individual diary. There is one type of diary for all individuals, which allows the recording of all expenditure. As of the 2000-2001 survey, the consumed quantities of products coming from the garden, from the farm etc., meals taken outside the home by the members of the households, guests invited for meals at home, are recorded in a special questionnaire.

Interview(s): Three visits are carried out in order to fill in the three following questionnaires:

- the household structure and expenditure connected with the dwelling;
- durables, holidays, clothing and domestic services;

- financial aid of the household, qualitative questions about the household's financial situation, and household resources (wages etc.), savings and exceptional resources.

Major expenditures and household resources are collected by using CAPI and standard paper forms for people older than 14. A computer program (SICORE) is used to transpose the product descriptions on the paper form to product labels, automatically.

Variables: empty.

Nomenclature: COICOP-HBS nomenclature adapted to national needs (6 levels).

Reference periods: 5 separate reference periods are used:

- the last 12 months for mortgages on the principal residence, expenditure on heating, insurance, local taxes, major work, the charges for a secondary residence, cars, caravans, boats, furniture, audiovisual equipment, school expenses, expenditure for other households and exceptional expenditure;
- the last 6 months for holidays and hospitalisations;
- the last 2 months for clothing;
- the last month for the expenses connected with audiovisual equipment, childcare, domestic work, levies charged by the employer and amounts paid to other households;
- the last receipt is used for the rent, water, electricity, gas, the telephone and for the garage and car park charges.

Data treatment:

Weighting: The final sample is weighted by comparing the household's characteristics (socio-professional category of the reference person, age of the reference person, the household's size, the place of residence and the number of active in the household) with the last Labour Force Survey.

Grossing up: The weighted survey data are representative of the whole population of private households (the collective households represent approximately 2% of the whole population).

Processing data: The questionnaires are filled in using portable computers (CAPI). The diaries are filled in traditionally using paper.

Control procedures: Coherence controls were programmed in CAPI to detect possible errors of input. In addition, an *a posteriori* treatment makes it possible to detect other inconsistencies (probability checks).

Types of statistical measures: Calculations of the exactness of the details obtained on expenditure averages. Sample errors calculated on individual data.

Production time: The complete results of the survey are available 12 months after the end of the collection.

Coherence with other statistics: The results of the 2000/01 survey will be confronted with national accounts data.

Forms of dissemination: Unknown.

Planned changes of the survey:

Unknown.

Ireland (IRL)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The Household Budget survey aims to determine the consumption expenditure structure of households in order to update the weights included in the Consumer Price Index.

Background: The first survey took place in 1951-52 and afterwards in 1965-66, 1973, 1980, 1987, 1994 and 1999. From 1973 and onwards the survey has dealt with all private households in the country, while before it was limited to urban households.

Legal base: No. Participation is voluntary.

Uses of survey: The main use of the survey is for supplying the weights for the updating of the Consumer Price Index.

Users of the survey: Economic research institutions and market researchers.

Time and Frequency

Frequency: Commencing with the 1994, the HBS will have a periodicity of five years.

Reference year: June 1999-July 2000

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 7644 households.

Sample design: Probability sampling. Oversampling of agricultural households.

Stratification: A two-stage sampling design is used. This comprises a first stage sample of 2,600 blocks (or small areas) selected at county level to proportionately represent eight strata reflecting population density. Each block was selected to contain, on average, 75 dwellings. In the second stage of sampling between 3 and 4 households are surveyed in each block to give a total sample of 7644 households. Households with farming as the main occupation are eliminated from the blocks and for these a supplementary sample from the National Farm Survey is added instead.

Sample representativeness: The sample is unbiased.

Sampling frame: Census of population enumeration areas.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the household. The survey units are the household and for some variables the individual member.

Response rate: 55%.

Substitution: Substitution is made for non-response. At the sample selection stage two samples are selected, an 'original' sample and a substitution sample. Non-co-operating households in the original sample is replaced by households from the substitution sample.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: All private households living on the national territory, except those having three or more lodgers.

Definition of household: A person living alone or a group of persons living at the same place, who share common cooking facilities.

Members of a household: Resident boarders are included if they share a meal a day with the household and spend at least 4 nights a week at the accommodation. Residents temporarily away are included if they contribute to the household's budget. Adults in

education are only included if they are present during the recording period whereas long term hospitalised persons are included unless they are away continuously for more than 6 months.

Reference person: The head of household is defined by the household.

Child-adult definition: Children are defined as household members under fourteen years of age.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The Irish survey is close to a consumption approach. Consumption of own production is evaluated for all households by the households themselves. Benefits in kind are measured included benefits paid by the employer as health and life insurance, education fees for children, free meals, food and petrol. Imputed rents are evaluated for principal residences using the stratification method. Both the cash price and the sum repaid can be determined for hire purchases, the recording is done at the moment of taking possession.

Household diary: There is a household diary and a diary for each adult household member. The detailed recording period is 14 days and the diaries are open-ended. The household records a description of each purchase and its price. The last page of the diary is devoted to business expenses e.g. expenditure which will be refunded at a later stage.

Variables: All main variables are covered in the Irish survey.

Nomenclature:

Classification(s): The variables are classified by item description.

Reference periods: A 12 months retrospective reference periods is used for items like house purchases, major durables, information on self-employed, for some specified social benefits etc. description of each purchase and its price. The last page of the diary is devoted to business expenses e.g. expenditure which will be refunded at a later stage.

Interview(s): One interview takes place before the detailed recording period. Two questionnaires are filled in, one household questionnaire and one personal questionnaire for each adult household member. The household questionnaire contains questions on household characteristics including education, accommodation and amenities and household utility bills such as electricity, telephone, mortgage and gas. The personal questionnaire contains questions on employment, occupation, income including receipts and benefits and regular personal payments (for example on cars, insurances, training expenses and personal allowances). Two specific questionnaires for agricultural households and their members are used.

Data treatment:

Weighting: The final sample is weighted for distribution by household composition, social group, farm size, town size stratum and region.

Grossing up: The figures are not grossed up to population size.

Processing data and Control procedures: Completed returns from co-operating households were subjected to stringent clerical scrutiny immediately on receipt at the CSO. Interviewers were queried concerning any apparent omissions or inconsistencies and on occasion were required to revisit sample households to obtain additional particulars.

The returns were prepared for keying and computer processing during this clerical scrutiny. Details of location, town size, social group, etc., were coded and period

indicators inserted on the questionnaires for annual, quarterly and monthly expenditure and income amounts for their automatic conversion to a weekly equivalent basis by computer. Each individual expenditure entry in the personal expenditure diaries also had to be coded. Business expenditure had to be deleted and any duplication between the expenditure diaries and individual questionnaires was eliminated.

The data returned by individual households were further checked by computer for consistency and completeness. Invalid checks were clerically investigated and corrected where necessary. The data were recycled through this computer validation process until all apparent defects were satisfactorily corrected.

Types of statistical measures: Average household weekly incomes and expenditures are calculated for all private households in Ireland. Standard errors are estimated for the income and expenditure results.

Production time: Results become available 16 months after the end of the survey.

Use of registers: No

Coherence with other statistics: The expenditure results are compared to the results of the private final consumption from the national accounts. The income results are compared to the information supplied by the Department of Social Welfare for State Transfer Payments and Revenue Commissioners for personal incomes and taxes.

Forms of dissemination: The results of the Household Budget are published in two volumes: Volume 1: Household Budget Survey, Preliminary Results; Volume 2: Household Budget Survey, Final Results.

Planned changes of the survey:
Continuing the 5 year cycle.

Italia (I)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: To measure private consumption, defined as all goods and services bought, or consumed from own production, by private households in order to satisfy their needs.

Background: The annual survey was started in 1968, before then a survey took place in 1963 as part of an EU-wide exercise.

Legal base: The National Statistical Programme.

Uses of survey: The survey is used for establishing final consumption in the national accounts and for the calculations of the weightings in the consumer price index. Furthermore, the survey is used in general for social analyses including poverty studies.

Users of the survey: At ISTAT: the national accounts department and the consumer price index section. The 'Inquiry Commission on poverty and social exclusion'. In general universities plus private and public firms.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Quarterly and annual data produced - only annual data published.

Reference year: 1999.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 20,930 households.

Sample design: Probability sample. The sample is selected in two stages stratified at commune and household level.

Stratification: The first selection stage consists of 107 large communes which are automatically included in the sample and a sample of more than 381 smaller communes where the sample is stratified by region, on the basis of the demographic dimension of communes. The second stage consists of the selection of households.

Sample representativeness: At regional level. The overall sampling rate is just under 1 per 1000 households. Three small regions are over sampled at a rate of 3-4 per 1000 in order to ensure adequate sample sizes. The quarterly sample is used for national accounts estimates.

Sampling frame: The communes are selected on basis of their demographic dimension according to the annual population register. The households are extracted from the population register of each sampled commune with equal probabilities.

Unit of measurement: Household.

Response rate: 79.4%, the response rate includes households entering the sample as substitutions.

Substitution: Non-responding households are substituted with households chosen according to the household dimension and the place of residence.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: All private households living in the national territory. The survey does generally not cover persons lacking permanent residential status in the area or those not on the population register for some purpose.

Definition of household: A household is a group of persons sharing marriage, parenthood, adoption or other family or emotional links with each other, living together and dealing with their needs together by sharing part or all of their income.

Members of a household: Members are those persons who habitually live in the household.

Reference person: The person indicated as such in the population register.

Child-adult definition: A child is less than 6 years. A boy/girl is between 6 and 17 years of age, and adults 18 years or more of age.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The Italian survey is close to a consumption approach:

- all households are asked about own production,
- only housing provided by the employer is evaluated as a benefit in kind,
- the rent value of owner occupied housing is evaluated by the household itself, reduced rents are not imputed,
- and instalment purchases are recorded at cash price at the moment of taking possession.

Household diary: The household diary is closed in nature. It is structured in different sections according to type of good or service to be recorded, divided into food and non-food groups. A single diary is used to record expenditures of the whole household for a period of 7 consecutive days, no diaries for individual members of the household are used. A separate diary is used for registration of own production and food received from the employer.

Interview(s): The interviewer contacts the household and hands out the diary. He/she comes back at the end of the month where the final interview is conducted.

Variables: The following types of information are asked about:

- characteristics about the household members (year of birth, civil status, education and employment);
- characteristics of principal house and expenditures for ordinary and extra-ordinary maintenance (3 months retrospective recall period);
- durables (3 months retrospective recall period);
- separate questions are asked about consumption outside home;
- non-daily expenditures on goods and services are recorded on the basis of a detailed specified list of categories using a reference period of one month, except for a group of exceptional expenditures (e.g. fees for lawyers, removal, etc.);
- life insurance, mortgage (last 12 months);
- income (the household is asked to indicate the approximate monthly income, 14 categories are available) and its composition, savings (approximate values for one year, 10 categories);
- expenditures habits for food and non-food goods (4 categories: hard discount, supermarket, traditional shop, market).

Nomenclature: The nomenclature used is for approximately 99% based on the COICOP-HBS, some modifications have been done for practical collect reasons. The nomenclature is in four levels with a total of 276 positions; 109 for food and beverages and 167 for non-food.

Classification(s): ESA (SEC) 1995 (Italian version).

Reference periods: Reference periods of one month for non-daily expenditures and holidays, 3 months for durables and housing maintenance expenditure.

Data treatment:

Weighting: A calibrate estimation by sex and age of population at macro-area level (NUTS1), and by total household and total population at regional level (NUTS2).

Grossing up: A grossing factor is applied taking into account the territorial stratum.

Processing data: The data are registered with coherence by a specific BLAISE programme on PC.

Control procedures: The data are corrected on a probabilistic methodologies, based on donor method. For qualitative and few quantitative variables missing data are imputed.

Types of statistical measures: The relative sampling error is calculated for main expenditure items.

Production time: Quarterly data are produced for national accounts with a delay of 70 days. Annual data are published within 180 days of finishing the data collection on standard files.

Use of registers: No

Coherence with other statistics: Full coherence with the Labour Force Survey and the 'Multi Purpose Social survey' as far as characteristics of the household and the individual are concerned. External controls are made with sales and production statistics for aggregate trends in expenditure.

Forms of dissemination: Data are published in the following publications: Annuario Statistico Italiano (Annual Bulletin, Italy), Compendio Statistico Italiano, I Consumi delle Famiglie, Relazione annuale.

Planned changes of the survey

None

Luxembourg (L)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: To obtain a weighting system for the consumer price index and to make studies on the standard of living and the consumer habits of households.

Background: The first survey took place in 1956-57; only 170 households in the iron and steel industry were surveyed.

Legal basis: No. Participation in the survey is voluntary.

Uses of the survey: For the Consumer Price Index, in the National Accounts and in studies on living standards.

Users of the survey:

- The statistical office of Luxembourg (STATEC),
- CEPS (Center for the Study of Population, Poverty and Public Policy),
- The Economic and Social Committee.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Irregular. The next survey will be in 2002.

Reference year: 1998

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 2, 990 households.

Sample design: The sample is drawn randomly, without stratification.

Sample representativeness: Representative on national level.

Sampling frame: Central population register (general directory of persons). The 'Centre Informatique de l'Etat', which runs the register, has developed a method for selecting heads of households.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the head of household.

Response rate: 50%, substitution is not allowed.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households.

Definition of the household: A household is defined as a person living alone or several persons having or not having family links between them, who generally live in the same accommodation and share food and other expenditures.

Members of a household: Persons who occupy a part of the accommodation, by paying a rent, and who are independent of the other occupants of the accommodation are not included. Persons temporarily absent during the diary period are integrated in the household when there is a financial link with the rest of the household. That is the case for example for students and hospitalised persons. On the other hand, persons in prison are not counted as member of the household.

Reference person: The head of household is designated by the household's members as the person taking the principal decisions. This definition is coherent with that of the Labour Force survey.

Child-adult definition: The pocket money diary is completed by adult members of the household defined as being 16 years or more. If 25 years or more: the person is seen as

being an adult whatever the economic situation. If less than 25 years: the person is regarded as a child if the person does not work.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The Luxembourgish survey can adapt to a consumption approach. The consumption of the household's own production is measured for farmers' households and for those having a vegetable garden. Instalment purchases are recorded by noting the total cash price of the good at the time of acquisition. The imputed rent is evaluated using the self-evaluation method. The households' declarations are, however, checked *a posteriori* by making a calculation per stratification in order to rectify any doubtful statements. Benefits in kind are practically non-existent except for rent free accommodation.

Household diary: The household's diary (open-ended) is filled in during a period of 15 days. There is also a diary for pocket money, which has to be completed by the adult members (16 years and more) of the household who receive pocket money.

Interview(s): Two interviews are carried out, one at the beginning and one at the end of the recording period. Four different questionnaires covering the following fields are used:

- personal and socio-economic characteristics of the household's members;
- housing conditions and durables;
- various infrequent expenditures;
- resources and deductions.

Variables: The most important variables are covered except for the individuals' occupation. For the income, households have the possibility of indicating the income class in which they belong (monthly income available in 8 classes). Almost 75% of the households in the sample made use of this alternative.

Nomenclature: The classification of goods and services used is the COICOP-HBS (4th level)

Classification(s): No international classification is used.

Reference periods: The collection is carried out using two separate reference periods:

- 12 retrospective months for the purchases of clothing and shoes, cars, furniture, durables, communication (only purchases of e.g. phones, faxes, etc.), leisure, holidays, education.
- 6 retrospective months is used for medical care.
- 3 retrospective months are used for transport, communication (not purchases) and non-recurrent expenditures (not holidays)

Data treatment:

Weighting: In order to assess the representativity of the sample, its structure is compared with that of the Population Census carried out 1 March 1991. The control variables are:

- the socio-economic category of the reference person;
- the household's size;
- the occupation status of the accommodation (tenant and owner);
- Income category (ECHP).

Weighting is only for correction of non-response.

Grossing up: No.

Processing data: The field work and processing is done by a private firm. Statec does the final checking and reweighting. Statec remains responsible for the concepts and definitions used in the survey.

Control procedures: By the private firm; logical controls .

Types of statistical measures: Calculation of sampling errors on the unweighted sample.

Production time: 2 years.

Coherence with other statistics: Comparison with national account data.

Forms of dissemination: Paper publication: ‘Enquête Budget des Ménages 1998, published in 2000, first results will be at the end of 1999.

Planned changes of the survey:

Statec plans to start a continuous survey in 2002 with the same questionnaire as in the previous survey. Nomenclatures should be brought more in line with Eurostat recommendations.

Netherlands (NL)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The aim of the Household Budget Survey is to obtain statistical information on the expenditure of different types of household in relation to the characteristics of the household (e.g. size, composition, income, socio-economic group), its accommodation and durable goods.

Background: The first survey took place in 1963. Since 1978, the CBS has been conducting the survey annually, in response to the need for regular information on the expenditure of households in the Netherlands.

The survey was last revised in 1992, most notably in terminology: the term "consumption" was replaced by "expenditure" and "net income" by "disposable income". The purpose of these changes was to provide a better match between the Household Budget Survey, national accounts and income statistics.

Legal base: No. Participation is voluntary.

Uses of survey: The results of the annual Household Budget Survey have many uses:

- preparation and evaluation of socio-economic policy, most notably in the area of consumption, e.g. calculating the impact of indirect taxes, expenditure on behalf of children (with a view to fixing the value of child benefit), and the effects of fiscal and family support policy;
- compilation of weightings to be applied to the household consumption price index once every five years;
- improvements to the estimate of the consumption account for the household sector in the national accounts;
- budget information, as provided by the National Institute for Information on Consumer Budgets, among others;
- market research;
- scientific studies, e.g. the calculation of price and income elasticity, the relationship between the rentable value and market value of owner-occupied dwellings, forecasts of consumption based on demographic change and research into nutritional value on the basis of information on the quantities of food purchased by households.

Apart from the Household Budget Survey's value as a survey in its own right, its relationship to other CBS statistics, especially the socio-economic accounts and national accounts, is important.

Users of the survey: Government departments, universities, market researchers, national accounts, consumer price indices, newly self-employed.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Since 1978, the Central Bureau of Statistics (CBS) has carried out an annual Household Budget Survey. The decision to make the survey annual (i.e. permanent) was taken in response to the need for regular information on the expenditure of all households in the Netherlands.

Reference year: 1999

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 1851 households.

Sample design: Multi-stage sampling is used. In the first stage, a sample of municipalities is drawn. The probability of being drawn corresponds to the number of addresses in each municipality. A number of large municipalities are always included in the sample. In the second stage, addresses in the selected municipalities are drawn from the Geographic Base Register, which is based on PTT Post delivery points.

Interviewers visit the households living at the selected addresses and ask if they are willing, in principle, to take part in the Household Budget Survey. The survey participants fill in a short questionnaire (the "recruitment form") on the characteristics of the household, including those of a socio-economic nature.

Stratification: Optimum allocation is used. The population is first divided into a number of strata. The measurement of total expenditure will be as accurate as possible if the numbers in each stratum are equal to the product of the size of the population and the standard deviation in the stratum.

The population per stratum is not known exactly, but is estimated using the Labour Force Survey and statistics on personal income distribution. The standard deviations are derived from previous Household Budget Surveys.

In order to select participants from the "recruited" households, use is made of background data on household income and the socio-economic group of the head of household.

The reweighting allows for making generally valid statements about the expenditure of all households, despite the skewed distribution of the sample.

Sample representativeness: The aim is to obtain a nationally representative sample after the weighting.

Sampling frame: Households are recruited to take part in the survey for one year. At the end of the survey year, some households are asked to take part for a second year. Households which agree to do so are known as "repeaters". After weighing up the advantages and disadvantages of using "repeaters", it was decided that households should not take part in the survey for more than three years and that the sample should not contain more than 50% of "repeaters".

Sampling frame for the 1999 Household Budget Survey:

- recruitment of households resident at addresses obtained from the Geographic Base Register;
- recruitment of participants in the 1998 survey (the "repeaters");
- recruitment of self-employed persons, whose names were obtained from the General Business Register.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the address where the household is resident. The survey units are the household and individual household members.

Response rate: More than 24000 households have to be approached in order to find about 4365 households willing to take part. Of these, 2413 households were selected by the CBS. The selected households included 49 % "repeaters".

77% of the 2413 households selected for the 1999 Household Budget Survey stayed in the survey. In other words, annual household expenditure in 1999 was measured on the basis of a sample of 1 851 households.

Substitution is not allowed.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households which have their main residence in the Netherlands, regardless of their nationality.

Definition of household: A private household comprises one or more persons sharing a dwelling and providing for their own daily needs. Persons living in homes (including homes for the elderly), institutions and itinerant households are not included in the survey.

Members of a household: Persons are members of a household if they are present both during its intensive reporting period and during the periods before and after it.

Reference person: Since 1992, the characteristics of the "main wage earner" have been used instead of those of the "head of household" to attribute a household to a category, since it is the former which have the greatest determining effect on household spending patterns. The main wage earner is defined as the member of the household with the highest personal income.

Child-adult definition: For recording purposes, the definition of "child" is not based on an age limit. In derived variables, persons aged 18 and over are classified as adults.

The term "children" includes adult household members' own children and stepchildren, but not foster children.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The approach adopted for the Netherlands survey resembles a consumption approach. Consumption of own production is measured, although production from the household's own garden is excluded. The household is asked to specify what benefits it receives from employers. Imputed rents are estimated for the owner-occupied principal residence. A national method of evaluation is used.

The regression model used, is based on estimations of the rentable dwellingvalue by estate offices (in the '0' and '5' years).

Hire-purchases are recorded at cash price at the date at which the purchaser takes possession.

Household diary: The diary method, which covers the entire year, is used for collecting many of the data. The household uses the diary to note down all its purchases on the day of purchase. In this way, the household does not forget what purchases it has made before it makes a note of them, and memory effects are negligible. Two household diaries and a holiday diary are used. *Household diary 1* is used almost throughout the entire year (apart from the exhaustive reporting period and holidays) to record all purchases, sales and repayments to the household (above a certain minimum) over a quarterly period. In the 1999 survey all transactions above 35 HFL were recorded. *Household diary 2* is used during the short exhaustive reporting period to record all expenditure and receipts, irrespective of the amount in question. The recording period has been reduced to one week since 1992. The diaries are also used to record the date of purchase or repayment, the quantity and type of article purchased, whether payment is made in instalments, the amount and the place of purchase (type of shop, etc.).

During holidays, expenditure is written up in the *holiday diary*, not in diary 1. Expenditure on travel, accommodation and meals in hotels or restaurants is noted, as is expenditure on articles with a value of at least HFL 50. For not-specified expenditure, a 'rest category' of holiday expenditure is calculated.

Interview(s): In addition to the three diaries, a number of questionnaires (entitled Recruitment, General Data, Retro, Regular Expenditure, Meter Readings, Income and

Contractual Savings) have to be answered once only. The Recruitment, General Data, Meter Readings and Retro questionnaires are computer-assisted and are filled in by the interviewer during his/her visit. The Regular Expenditure, Income and Contractual Savings questionnaires are structured questionnaires which households are required to fill in themselves.

The *Recruitment questionnaire* is a short, general questionnaire which asks for background information on characteristics which have a major influence on spending patterns. These data are used to select which households should take part in the Household Budget Survey and to distribute them among the reporting periods.

The *General Data questionnaire* relates, *inter alia*, to the composition of the household, the education and occupations of household members aged 15 and over, characteristics of the household's accommodation and ownership of durable goods. This questionnaire is completed in the December prior to the survey year.

The *Retro questionnaire* is completed during the interviewer's final visit in the January following the survey year. The questionnaire first states the CBS's interpretation of the household's situation at the beginning of the survey year, and then asks if the situation has changed. Any changes which took place in the course of the survey year are thus recorded retrospectively.

The *Regular Expenditure questionnaire* relates to expenditure on goods, services or commitments which recurs at regular intervals and which is more or less fixed. The interviewer gives this questionnaire to the household at the beginning of the exhaustive reporting period. The intention is for the household to fill in the questionnaire itself, during the reporting period. This gives the household an opportunity to collect the relevant bills. At the end of the reporting period, the interviewer checks the answers to the questionnaire for completeness and helps with any problems.

The *Meter Readings questionnaire* covers reading of meters which are read three times. In the case of the 1999 survey, they were read in December 1998, July 1999 and January 2000. The readings are used, with the help of tariff data and degree days, to calculate the household's annual expenditure on the metered items.

Once the survey year has ended (January 2000 in the case of the 1999 survey), the participating households are given the extensive *Income questionnaire*, which it fills in as soon as it has received its annual statement of income and/or benefits. The questions are worded in such a way that the answers match the household's fiscal data as much as possible.

Variables: The Dutch survey covers all main variables from the Eurostat tabulation plan and is rich in content.

Nomenclature: The Dutch nomenclature on products is very detailed, it has 9 levels and more than 2900 positions.

Reference periods: The household records most of its expenditure in a diary on the day of the transaction. The Regular Expenditure questionnaire asks for the household's fixed outgoings. If these are not monthly, the household notes down the most recent payment. The Retro questionnaire is used at the end of the survey year to record any significant changes which took place during the year.

Treatment of data:

Weighting: The Household Budget Survey uses the multiplicative weighting method, also known as iterative proportional fit.

The following variables are used in the weighting:

- net household income;
- household size;
- sex (in the case of one-person households);
- socio-economic group of the main wage earner;
- type of housing (rented or owner-occupied).

The distribution of these variables in the population is obtained from the statistics on personal income distribution, annual household statistics and the Housing Needs Survey.

Grossing up: Not done.

Processing data: The data contained in the completed questionnaires and diaries are entered interactively in a local network. The final results are compiled on a main-frame computer. A separate input program is used for each questionnaire and diary. The various input programs are linked to each other. External files are used for coding and checks. Standard software packages are used on the local network and mainframe to check and correct the data material retrospectively.

Control procedures: During or immediately after input, the data are automatically checked and various derivations become available.

In the case of questionnaires containing mainly closed questions, three different checks are performed on the answers:

- value checks (the input value must be in a certain band);
- ratio checks (the combination of values with different variables must be correct);
- flow-chart or completeness checks (have the questions which should have been answered actually been answered?).

At the end of each quarter, a check is carried out to ensure that all the households have submitted all the relevant documents. A household which fails to submit a household diary or Regular Expenditure questionnaire will almost certainly be removed from the sample permanently.

In addition to automatic checks on individual items, plausibility checks are performed at aggregated level. Overviews of the results for each article (average price, average quantity etc.) are compiled and used to detect and correct any systematic errors in good time.

Certain items and groups of items are checked on a global basis.

The large number of questionnaires and diaries makes the Household Budget Survey a complex operation. This means that, once the data contained in individual documents have been entered, checked and corrected, the documents themselves have to be checked against each other in various ways. This type of check is carried out after the data have been input. If an implausible statement is found, the raw material is checked and, where appropriate, corrected.

Further changes are made to the item file on the mainframe, with the aid of correction charts. The aim is to adjust the item file in such a way that it is correctly structured.

The next step is to estimate missing data:

- Missing energy data are imputed on the basis of data obtained from the 1998 and 1999 Household Budget Surveys.
- Missing income data are estimated using a regression model. The same goes for the rentable value of owner-occupied dwellings, using data from the Household Budget

Survey carried out in 1995, a year in which estate agents valued the rentable value of dwellings.

The amounts which households state as having been paid in property tax and Water Authority levies are subject to adjustment in the light of the relevant tariffs and basis of assessment.

Expenditure is annualised in order to obtain the annual expenditure pattern for each category of household.

Finally, checks are carried out on aggregated material in order to detect non-systematic errors and implausible entries. This mainly involves comparisons with the corresponding data from earlier surveys and data from external sources. The checks are performed on the weighted and unweighted figures. Depending on the results obtained, the raw material is corrected where necessary.

Types of statistical measures: Standard error is calculated for each expenditure category.

Production time: The results are usually published within a year of the survey's completion. The survey year is the calendar year, although the CBS does not receive the final household data (income and contractual savings) until about April of the following year. The first data from the 1999 Household Budget Survey were published in the Statistical Bulletin in April 2001.

Use of registers: No registers are used.

Coherence with other statistics: The main definitions are harmonised.

Forms of dissemination: Data from the 1999 Household Budget Survey were published in the Statistical Bulletin (No 13, 5 April 2001) and in *Budget Onderzoek 1999, Kerncijfers* (1999 Household Budget Survey Key Data) (2001).

Data are also available on diskette. The CBS has an electronic file available for sale to third parties: standard microfiles.

Planned changes of the survey:

There was no survey carried out in 2001 and 2002. In 2003 and 2004 there will be a regular annual survey. The survey will be redesigned. The redesigned survey will be operational in 2005. The details of the redesign are not known yet.

Österreich (A)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The main purposes of the survey are to produce the data to construct the weights in the Consumer Price Index and to get information for analyses of living standards and poverty.

Background: After 1945, the survey was first done in 1954, then every 10 years until 1993/94. Since 1993/94 every 5 years.

Legal base: No.

Uses of survey: The data is used for constructing the weights in the Consumer Price Index, for analyses of living standards and poverty as well as for the national accounts. An attempt is made to capture direct expenditures for children.

Users of the survey: Within the statistical office, the consumer price and the national accounts sections. Otherwise the data are used by private firms including marketing institutions plus economic and social science research institutions.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Every 5 years.

Reference year: November 1999 - October 2000.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 7098 households.

Sample design: Probability sampling.

Stratification: 2 stage sample allocation, uniform from the 9 Austrian regions (Bundesländern) divided into 26 sub-samples.

Sample representativeness: Representative for the 9 Austrian regions (Bundesländer=NUTS 2 level).

Sampling frame: The sample is drawn from the Austrian microcensus 1994 and 1995 (new building/dwellings were added).

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the dwelling. Survey units are the households, for some variables, however, it is the individual member of the household.

Response rate:

Addresses located (excl. unoccupied addresses; no private dwelling; demolition)	28.051
<i>No contact possible</i>	6.225
<i>No interviewer available</i>	4.378
Valid addresses	17.448
<i>Refuse to participate</i>	10.350
Non-response rate (in %)	59,3
Complete interviews	7.098
Response rate (in %)	25,3

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households and their mem-bers.

Definition of household: One person or more than one person living in the same dwelling, and (in case of more than one person) also doing the housekeeping together, i.e. perform the routine duties (as cooking and cleaning) of managing a house.

Members of a household: Temporarily absent persons who are economically dependent on the household are included (e.g. students). Persons living in the dwelling but not economically dependent on the household constitute their own households.

Reference person: Head of household, or the person contributing most to the total income of the household (self-defined by the household).

Child-adult definition: The basis is the national rule for ‘family-aid’ support. As a consequence, own children, step, and adopted children are included. Moreover, children are not older than 18 years of age, or 26 years of age if they are students. A person below 15 years is never registered as the head of household. Head of household or spouse of the head of household may never be a child.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The Austrian survey follows exactly the Eurostat recommendations. All households are asked about own production which will be evaluated *a posteriori* (average consumer-price per quantity) and included at the time of consumption. All benefits in kind specified by the households will be evaluated. Imputed rents will be estimated for owner-occupied and rent-free dwellings; a method of stratification will be applied. Hire-purchases will be evaluated using the cash price at the moment of taking possession.

Household diary: The households will fill in a household diary for a period of 14 days. The diary itself is divided in three sections: The first section records goods of own production and benefits in kind. The second section is to register expenditures for food, beverages and food consumed in restaurants, cafes, bars, etc. The household has to select the relevant group and note the price and in some cases the quantity. To help the household finding the right group an alphabetic list is provided. The third section is to fill in all other expenditures, e.g. clothing, transport, health, personal care, etc. The household has to register the price and to mark whether to good is bought for a child. Personal expenditures of individual members can be added in a small diary. The groups in the individual diary cover e.g. food, beverages, clothes, shoes, etc.

Interview(s): At the beginning and the end of the 14 days diary keeping period an interview takes place to gather information about age, sex, occupation, education and income etc. of each household member, to collect information on the dwelling (legal framework, size, year of construction, etc.) and on the living conditions of the household including the availability of a television, telephone, car, etc.

Variables: Most of the variables in the recommended list of Eurostat can be constructed.

Nomenclature: COICOP-HBS 1997.

Classification(s): ISCO88; NACE Rev. 1; National Classifications: Highest Level of Education ('Höchste abgeschlossene Schulbildung'): ISCED can be constructed; Hierarchical Job Classification ("Berufsschichtliste").

Reference periods: The reference period is 14 days (diary-keeping period). A 12 month retro-spective reference period is used for the bigger expenditure items (the threshold price is ATS 3000 (approximately € 218)). For expenditures on accommodation, the reference period is one month.

Data treatment:

Weighting: The survey is weighted with the already weighted Microcensus, using the following variables: region (NUTS 2 level) by 26 reference periods, household type, activity status of the head of household, status employment of the head of household, urbanisation, age and sex.

Processing data: Fieldwork, logistics and processing of household survey information is done by a private firm.

Control procedures: Expenditures: controls to avoid duplications and oversights; controls with upper and lower limits for each position of expenditures (clarification mainly directly with the household); *a posteriori* check of the expenditure data with the data of Private Consumption of National Accounts. Amounts of food (kilo, litre, etc); *a posteriori* check with supply balance sheet. Variables: computerised logical checks (clarification mainly directly with the household); *a posteriori* checks with the Austrian Microcensus.

Income: Missing income values have been imputed.

Types of statistical measures: Absolute and relative measures plus sampling errors calculated.

Production time: The data are available to Eurostat in 2001.

Use of registers: No.

Coherence with other statistics: The plausibility analysis takes into account the results from the National Accounts and the Austrian Microcensus and other administrative sources (especially for income variables).

Forms of dissemination: The main results are published in the 'Statistische Nachrichten' - the monthly newsletter of Statistics Austria - in the Statistical Yearbook and on Internet and on Internet. Furthermore, a publication with the expenditures for Austria and the NUTS2-regions in the most detailed COICOP-version is already finished and a publication with social-statistic relevant results (type of household, ...) is planned.

Planned changes of the survey:

None.

Portugal (P)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The following priority objectives have been identified: to update the weights used for the Consumer Price Index; to estimate the consumption expenditure of private individuals in order to establish the main components of private consumption for inclusion in the National Accounts; to analyse the consumption behaviour and living conditions of households; to construct a system of poverty indicators.

Background: First survey 1967-68.

Legal base: No. Participation is voluntary.

Uses of survey: For the Consumer Price Index and the National Accounts, and to analyse living conditions and to construct poverty indicators.

Users of survey: The Consumer Price Index and National Accounts sections in the statistical office. External users: ministries, universities, private market research companies, Eurostat etc.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: After 1989 the survey takes place every 5 years.

Reference year: January 2000 – January 2001

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 9 643.

Sample design: Probability sampling, multi-stage sampling with three stages.

Stratification: The NUTS II region is the sole criterion for stratification.

Sample representativeness: Self-weighting sample, representative on NUTS II level.

Sampling frame: Master sample based on 1991 census.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the dwelling.

Response rate: 73.4 %.

Substitution: Substitutions are made from an extra 25% sample specially selected for the purpose. Substitution is used for empty dwellings, dwellings unable to be located, households refusing to respond when initial contact is made and households unable to respond.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households in mainland Portugal, Madeira and the Azores.

Definition of household: The 'private domestic household' consists of:

- a group of persons living in the same housing unit who usually share their expenditure on food and housing;
- or an individual occupying the whole of a housing unit, or someone sharing the unit with others but not fulfilling the above conditions.

Members of a household: The household includes all persons in the private domestic household present during the survey period. Members temporarily absent and living in, for example, educational or health establishments (provided that their expenses are borne by the household), individuals working in another locality but making frequent visits to

the household (and contributing to its budget) and individuals temporarily absent for reasons of compulsory military service or similar are included.

Reference person: The head of household is defined by the household itself. A reference person can be determined *a posteriori* as the head of household if active, by default the spouse if active, by default the oldest active adult. If there is no active in the household the reference person will be the same as the head of the household.

Child-adult definition: A child is below 18 years of age. A person between 18 and 21 years of age can be defined as a child if he/she is not in active employment .

Consumption expenditure approach: The Portuguese survey measures all relevant aspects of consumption expenditures of the household like the household's internal production, benefits/income in kind, imputed rent and the cash prices of hire purchases. The focus of the survey is consumption orientated. The estimation of the imputed rent is based on a self-evaluation of the household.

Household diary: The diary is open-ended, the household is asked to record quantities and the prices actually paid. The diary keeping period has increased from 7 days in the 1989-90 survey to 14 days in the 1994-95 survey.

Interview(s): The household is visited at least 5 times during the data collection period. 4 questionnaires included the diaries are completed:

- one on household characteristics and income,
- the diary measuring expenditures and own production,
- an individual diary measuring individual expenditure and a retrospective questionnaire covering important expenditures for longer than a month as well as non-monetary transfers and benefits in kind. A fifth questionnaire containing qualitative questions related to poverty is also used.

Variables: All important variables are covered.

Life insurance (retirement savings) are not covered.

Nomenclature: COICOP-HBS

Classification(s): The first level of ISCO88 is used as the occupational classification and NACE rev.1 is used for classifying activity.

Reference periods: Three retrospective periods are used: monthly, bimonthly and annual.

Data treatment:

Weighting: The sample is weighted using the NUTS II regions.

Grossing up: The estimates used are ratio estimators with the demographic projections as auxiliary variables.

Processing data: CAPI is used in the interview phase

Control procedures: Automatic control procedures are installed during the data collection phase. The entire database is checked and corrected in retrospect in order to produce consistent and reliable data. This was done primarily by cross-referencing certain variables, enabling errors to be identified and corrected.

Types of statistical measures: Absolute figures are produced and standard errors calculated.

Production time: The period from collection of the last data to publication of the figures lasts approximately one year.

Use of registers: No.

Coherence with other statistics: Comparisons with the results of the 1991 Census, the Employment Survey and the Amenities Survey are done.

Forms of dissemination: A methodology is published and results and analyses of the data are published.

Planned changes of the survey:

Next week we send you some changes of the survey.

Suomi/Finland (FIN)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The purpose of the Household Budget survey is to produce information on the household's or the individual's consumer behaviour, on how their incomes are created and distributed, on their debt plus the public goods and services which they receive in the form of welfare services (for example education, health and social services), *and furthermore on ownership of consumer durables.*

Background: The first *modern* survey took place in 1966 and was continued in 1971, 1976, 1981, 1985, 1990, 1994, 1995, 1996 and 1998.

Legal base: No.

Uses of survey: The main use of the survey has traditionally been to provide information on the structure of the consumption expenditure of households for use in the revision of the weights in the Consumer Price Index. *HBS data have also been used as comparison material by national accounts statistics.* In addition, the survey has been used to examine household income, purchasing patterns and ownership of consumer durables as well as social benefits in kind.

Users of the survey: In addition to the users in Statistics Finland, the results are used by researchers at universities and research institutes, by market researchers, private entrepreneurs, consumer authorities, teachers, students, media etc.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Until 1994 the survey took place approximately every five years, from 1994 to 1996 the survey was conducted annually. From 1998 onwards every three years.

Reference year: 1998.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 4359 (*Final sample*).

Sample design: Probability sampling. Some sparsely populated regions are oversampled.

Stratification: The sample is selected in two phases: Firstly, a master sample of register households is selected. Secondly, the final sample is elected with stratification according to region (NUTS2 and type of municipality). The inclusion probabilities vary according to household size.

Sample representativeness: The sample is representative of the population.

Sampling frame: Central Population register which is up-dated continuously. First an individual is chosen and afterwards the household is created by taking into account all the persons living on the same address.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sample unit is the individual. The enumeration unit is the household and for some types of information the individual.

Response rate: 63.4 %. Substitution is not allowed.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households and their members living in Finland, excluding members living in institutions.

Definition of household: A household may consist of one person with an independent responsibility for his own economic maintenance, or of several persons living together who wholly or partly share their meals or pooling their incomes for other use.

Members of a household: Persons temporarily away from the household serving their military service are included in the household and so are persons who, although they live away from the household, contribute to the household income. Servants and boarders are not included in the household and neither are students living away on own obtained grants.

Reference person: The reference person has been self-defined by the household, if it is an unanimous decision of the household. Otherwise the information is checked against other information on activity and income. Normally the household member who has highest income is the reference person.

Child-adult definition: A child is a person under 18 years of age. Dependent children are all persons under 17 years of age and those 17-24 years of age who are economically dependent on their parents.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The Finnish survey can be approximated to a consumption approach. All households are asked about own production which is evaluated *a posteriori* at production price at the time of consumption. Benefits in kind such as free housing, company car, gas, electricity, water and meals paid by the employer are measured. Imputed rents for owner-occupiers are estimated for principal residences (included for reduced rents) and the consumption is evaluated using the stratification method (except for in certain strata where a model has been used due to the lack of rented accommodation in the area.) Hire-purchases are valued taking into account the whole sum repaid (including interest) at the moment of taking possession.

Household diary: The household diary is kept for a 14 days period. Pocket diaries are used by family members. The diaries are open-ended, the household is asked to specify the price of a good, if it has been paid or received as a gift, if the good has been consumed outside the home or if the good has been given free by the employer (meals). The household is also asked to specify consumption of own production in quantities.

Interview(s): One interview takes place in the survey, it is recorded just before the start of the diary keeping period.

Variables: All important variables are covered in the Finnish survey. Food quantities were also measured in the 1998 survey.

Nomenclature: The COICOP-HBS consumption expenditure classification was adopted in the 1998 survey. The most detailed level of the national classification includes about 650 headings. In Finland the consumption and income concepts and classifications recommended by the United Nations and Eurostat are applied as far as possible.

Classification(s): Standard type classifications used are socio-economic groups, household type, income brackets and areas (regions).

Reference periods: In the interview a 12 months retrospective reference period is used for items like employment, fees of different sorts, for different information on loans and credits, for insurances, for education and for holidays. Information on health in a broad sense and on fees regarding legal advice are surveyed using a retrospective reference period of three months.

Data treatment:

Weighting: Weighting and calibration as means to correct for non-response and sampling errors.

Processing data: Computer assisted coding is used when diary data is recorded. Interview data and data from registers are combined with the diary data.

Control procedures: Many internal checks are carried out. External checks are done with national account estimates, data from the retail sales and census data.

Types of statistical measures: Standard errors are calculated.

Production time: The expenditure data is available by the end of the year following the survey year. Final survey results including register based income data some months later.

Use of registers: Several different registers are used in order to obtain the information on income.

Coherence with other statistics: The data is compared with other similar types of information from for example the national accounts. The coherence with other statistics is satisfactory.

Forms of dissemination: Publications, WEB, CDs, archive and tailor-made tables. Micro-level data are provided for scientific purposes only, and permission is needed.

Planned changes of the survey:

None.

Sverige (S)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: To give information about level and distribution of different expenditure items for different types of households.

Background: Household Budget Surveys have been conducted since 1907. In total there have been twenty major surveys on household expenditures. Random sampling from the entire Swedish population was introduced in the 1958 survey.

Legal base: There is no legal base. Participation in the survey is voluntary.

Uses of survey: The survey is used for description and analyses of consumption level and distribution for different types of households.

Users of the survey: - Different ministries, - government authorities, - local government (advising on private economy of households), - researchers, - to some extent by the national accounts and the Consumer Price Index, - market research institutes, - media, - the general public.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: 1996, 1999.

Reference year: May 1999 – April 2000.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 3031 households.

Sample design: Probability sampling.

Stratification: The sample is drawn with probabilities proportional to size.

Sample representativeness:: At aggregate regional level (NUTS level 1 and 2).

Sampling frame: Individuals are chosen from the register of the total population and the household is constructed on basis of the sampled individual.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sampling unit is the individual, the enumeration unit is the household.

Response rate: 53 %.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households. 'Households' more than 74 years of age are excluded, that is individuals over 74 years of age have no probability of being sampled.

Definition of household: Three criteria are used for defining persons as part of a household: co-residence, joint provision of food and pooling of income.

Members of a household: Residents temporarily away are included in the household. Resident employees are not included.

Reference person: The choice of reference person depends on the domain of study. Sometimes it is the oldest member in the core household. Concerning the socio-economic classification of the household, it is the adult person having the highest socio-economic code.

Child-adult definition: A child is a person of less than 18 years of age.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The Swedish follow mainly a consumption approach. Consumption of own production is not measured for all households in the

survey 1999 Benefits in kind are evaluated when they are taxable and hence obtainable from administrative registers. The register gives information about the taxable amount and which benefit(s) the amount refers to. For households having more than one benefit, it is not possible to split the total amount and assign a specific part of it to a specific benefit. Imputed rent is estimated for owner occupied dwellings. For housing provided free of rent or at reduced rent, information is available in the same way as for benefits in general. Hire purchases are evaluated at their cash price at the moment of taking possession.

Household diary: The detailed recording of consumption expenditures takes place over 2 weeks. Food expenditures are not recorded in detail as in the previous survey, but as a lump sum. There is a main household diary as well as a voluntary personal diary for each member of the household.

Interview(s): There is an interview at the beginning of the survey period. The questions are about household composition, housing and employment. In the survey The HBS sample of the survey 2003 will be included in the sample of the Income Distribution Survey. All contacts with the households are made by telephone.

Variables: All major variables are covered in the 1999 survey, but food expenditures only as a lump sum.

Nomenclature: The COICOP-HBS is used in principle at the 4 digit level, although some recodification is necessary before transmission to Eurostat.

Classification(s): ISCO is used as the basis for the socio economic classification.

Reference periods: The retrospective reference period is 12 months. The items concerned are the infrequent expenditures like housing, consumer durables and insurances..

Data treatment:

Weighting: A post-stratification of the sample is done For the 1999 survey, a calibration technique is used, to some extent with help of data from other sources.

Grossing up: The survey sample is grossed up to population size in the weighting procedure using the population register.

Processing data: The data from the diaries are processed centrally using a program for data entry.

Control procedures: Different types of control are made as data entry controls, computerised controls and macro (external) controls.

Types of statistical measures: Averages and their sampling errors are calculated.

Production time: The time lapse from end of data collection to final dissemination, including income variables, was one year for the 1999 survey.

Use of registers: Register information is used for income, education and benefits.

Coherence with other statistics: The information is compared with the national account data **Forms of dissemination:** Paper publication and the whole publication on internet

Planned changes of the survey:

Probably changes in the survey 2003.

United Kingdom (UK)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The main aim is to supply the weights for the Retail Price Index (the UK consumer price index). Data from the survey also contribute to the estimates of households' final consumption for the national accounts.

Background: The survey started from a recommendation of the Cost of Living Advisory Committee for a study of the expenditure of private households. A large survey took place in 1953-54 and the results were used to reweight the retail price index in 1956. The FES was started on a continuous basis in 1957.

Legal base: No. Participation is voluntary.

Uses of survey: Besides the use for the price index and in national accounts, the survey is used to model tax and social security benefit systems, and for a wide variety of studies and research on economic and social conditions of households.

Users of the survey: Central government, research institutes, academics, commerce, market research, financial services sector, and Eurostat.

Timing and frequency:

Frequency: Annual since 1957.

Reference year: April 1999-March 2000.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): 7,100 households in the reference year.

Sample design: Probability sampling. Stratified multi-stage cluster design in Great Britain, simple random sample in Northern Ireland.

Stratification: The sample in Great Britain is selected in two stages. The first is the selection of 672 postal sectors stratified by region, area type and by two 1991 Census variables, socio-economic group and ownership of cars. In stage two 17 postal addresses are selected per postal sector. In Northern Ireland there is no stratification.

Sample representativeness: A study of the nature of non-response was made for the 1991 survey. Census characteristics of responding and non-responding households (selected in January to June; the Census was in April) were examined. Results were published in beginning of 1996.

Sampling frame: In Great Britain the Postcode Address File is used for selecting addresses. This file is updated twice a year. In Northern Ireland the Rating Valuation list is used as the sample frame.

Unit of measurement: The unit is the household. If there is more than one household at an address up to three are included in the survey, sampled if necessary. Survey units are the household and the individual members.

Response rate: 63% in 1999-2000; substitution is not allowed.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: The survey covers all private households living in the national territory except for the following territories: Scilly Islands and the Scottish offshore islands.

Definition of household: In the 1999-2000 and earlier surveys the household is defined as a person living alone or a group of persons living at the same address, having meals

prepared together or with common housekeeping. See the section on changes to the survey for the definition from April 2000.

Members of a household: A broad definition of what constitute household members is used. Visitors are included if the stay in the household is for more than a month. Students older than 16 years of age are not included if they are living away from the household at the time of interview.

Reference person: In the 1999-2000 survey the head of household is the person in whose name the accommodation is owned or rented, or the husband of that person. See the section on changes to the survey for the definition from April 2001.

Child-adult definition: Diary and income information is collected for 'spenders' who are persons aged 16 or over. Information is also collected on the spending of children aged 7–15 years. For most results (reports, tabulations etc.) adults are taken to be aged 18 or more or under 18 but married.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: The British survey is a typical expenditure survey, with some flexibility. In the published results no imputation is made for the income to or rent paid by owner occupiers or rent-free tenants. However estimates of imputed rent, based on a regression model of private rents, are included in the data supplied to Eurostat. Consumption of own production is measured only for farmer households, households with a vegetable garden and for shopkeepers bringing stock into the household. This consumption is valued at market prices and is recorded at the time of stocking. Luncheon vouchers given by employers are evaluated as a benefit in kind. The sums paid as well as the cash price for hire-purchases are registered if the good is bought during the reference period.

Household diary: Each person aged 16 and over is asked to complete a personal diary of all expenditure during a 14 days period. No household or 'housewife' diary exists. The diary is semi open-ended with a double page for each day divided into 5 sections:

- food and drink consumed at home, and any other goods bought at the same shop,
- take away meals and snacks eaten at home,
- meals and snacks consumed away from home,
- clothing and footwear,
- all other payments.

From the 1998-99 survey onward each child aged 7 to 15 has also been asked to keep a simplified diary for the 14 days.

Interview(s): An initial interview is carried out with the head of household and spouse/partner in which questions are asked about regular payments such as rents, utility bills and insurance premiums, and about some large, infrequent purchases. Each person aged 16 and over is then asked detailed questions about their income. The interviewer returns to the household after five or six days to check on the diary keeping and again at the end of the two week diary period to check and collect the completed diaries.

Variables: The survey covers a wide variety of variables and is rich in content. A very detailed income questionnaire provides precise information on income including social benefits.

Nomenclature: In the 1999-2000 survey the nomenclature used is based on the Retail Price Index. It has 15 main levels, 124 sublevels, and further positions below this.

Classification(s): UK Classification of Occupation (1990) (comparable to ISCO88). UK Classification of Industries (comparable to ISIC).

Reference periods: For most items the 2-week diary period, but for some household items retrospective recall periods of 3, 6 and 12 months are used. The income is collected for the last pay period, or last accounting period for self-employed.

Data treatment:

Weighting: The grossing applied from 1998-99 onwards is differential and reduces non-response bias. Initial weights are based on a study of non response linked to the 1991 Census. Final weights match population totals by age group and by sex. All weighting/grossing factors are at the household level.

Grossing up: To population totals by age group by sex, as described above.

Processing data: A change to Computer Assisted Personal Interviewing, CAPI, was made in April 1994. Both the household and the income questionnaire use the BLAISE software. The diary information is captured using BLAISE for CADI (Computer Assisted Data Input).

Control procedures: The data go through extensive quality control, starting with the range and consistency checks in to the CAPI interview programme and including automatic outlier detection and checks of consistency between expenditure and income.

Types of statistical measures: Absolute numbers including averages for household groupings. Standard errors are calculated. Basic units of measurement are £ per week per household.

Production time: Report published 6-7 months after survey period.

Use of registers: No.

Forms of dissemination: A report 'Family Spending' is published every year and put on the UK National Statistics web site. Additional tables can be provided by ONS. Anonymised microdata are deposited with the UK's Data Archive.

Changes since the 1999-2000 survey:

- In April 2000 the household definition was changed to conform with the UK harmonised definition. The change is to allocate to a single household people who share common housekeeping **or** a living room. The effect is to increase average household size slightly.
- In April 2001 the household reference person changed from the head of household, as defined above. The household reference person is now the householder with the highest income. The householder is the person or persons in whose name the accommodation is owned or rented.
- In April 2001 the Family Expenditure Survey merged with the National Food Survey to become the Expenditure and Food Survey (EFS). The design is the same as for the FES, but the food descriptions are more detailed and quantities of food are collected in addition to the expenditure.
- From April 2001 expenditure has been coded to COICOP-HBS categories (fourth level), with a fifth level to improve codability and meet the needs of users.

ANNEX 2

European codes for all VARIABLES and UNITS

European codes for the VARIABLES

1. Context

For a comparative analysis of the Household Budget surveys at European Union level it is fundamental to harmonise the classifications and coding system of essential variables. Moreover, such a harmonisation, with the definitions of consumption expenditure and income, is an essential precondition in the procedures initiated by Eurostat.

The advantages of such a harmonisation of the surveys are undeniable:

- For Eurostat, management of the Community database would be facilitated, since it would eliminate recoding national data in Community format, which is lengthy and requires the development of conversion tables which are not always very satisfactory in terms of quality.
- In addition, such a harmonisation would make it possible to improve the reliability of data as well as the speed of access to it, in particular for studies requiring access to individual information or for the production of Eurostat's comparative tables.
- For the Member States, the use of internationally-recognised classifications (particularly COICOP¹⁷-HBS) can only have positive consequences. This does not confine the Member States to following a rigid structure since the possibility of having additional, more detailed levels, remains open.

Among the variables whose harmonisation to the Community format is important, those on activity, income, the structure of the household and, obviously, consumption have priority.

2. The Community variables list

It is possible to analyse most of the information in the Household Budget surveys by organising the data at micro level according to two types of record. Accordingly, the database managed by Eurostat is structured in two file types:

- the member file (variables starting with M);
- the household file (variables starting with H).

Certain variables are classified as “basic” variables because information can only be provided via the primary data contained in the national surveys. Other variables are constructed from these basic variables for the purposes of compiling the comparative tables (“derived” variables). Insofar as all the basic variables are indicated by the Member States at the time of the transmission of the micro-data to Eurostat, the derived variables can be calculated by Eurostat. On the other hand, if data are missing, calculation of these derived variables becomes a problem. This is why Eurostat suggests that Member States incorporate in their surveys the necessary modifications in order to be able to transfer the basic variables.

In relation to the variables lists proposed before, some new series of variables have been introduced, i.e.:

- HB074, type of household
- HI12, main source of income

The variables list has been split in two different parts (see chapter 5) :

¹⁷ COICOP = *Classification Of Individual Consumption by Purpose*.

- The most important variables
- The remaining variables

2.1. THE MOST IMPORTANT VARIABLES

2.1.1 The basic variables

2.1.1.1 Identification, weighting, demographic characteristics

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

MA02 HA02	Survey year		X(4)
--------------	-------------	--	------

The last two figures of the survey year have to be specified. Two consecutive years are indicated if the survey extends over 2 calendar years.

MA04 HA04 ¹⁸	Identification number of the household		X(13)
----------------------------	--	--	-------

MA05	Line number of the member of household	01 ↓ 15 99 Not specified	99
------	--	-----------------------------------	----

Each member of the household is identified by a line number starting with the first member as '01'. The maximum has been set arbitrarily at 15, in order to take into account extreme situations, but it is more plausible that the sizes are much smaller.

HA08	Region	use NUTS 1 (see below) 00 No division for NUTS 1 for Denmark, Ireland, Luxembourg, Sweden 99 Not specified	99
------	--------	--	----

The NUTS classification level 1 uses a one digit number plus letters when the code is higher than 9. For the Household Budget surveys, this system is replaced by coding with two-digit numbers.

The NUTS classification and the variable relating to the population density have the aim of identifying various types of places in a country in order to reflect different types of consumption behaviour.

¹⁸ The framed variables are included in the Simplified Data Base Version of HBS. In this Simplified Version only the Household profiles are included, not the Household Members.

Belgique-Belgie

- 01 Region Bruxelles-Capitale / Brussels Hfdst. Gewest
- 02 Vlaams Gewest
- 03 Region Wallonne

Danmark

Deutschland

- 01 Baden-Wuerttemberg
- 02 Bayern
- 03 Berlin
- 04 Brandenburg
- 05 Bremen
- 06 Hamburg
- 07 Hessen
- 08 Mecklenburg-Vorpommern
- 09 Niedersachsen
- 10 Nordrhein-Westfalen
- 11 Rheinland-Pfalz
- 12 Saarland
- 13 Sachsen
- 14 Sachsen-Anhalt
- 15 Schleswig-Holstein
- 16 Thuringen

Ellada

- 01 Voreia Ellada
- 02 Kentriki Ellada
- 03 Attiki
- 04 Nisia Aigaiou, Kriti

España

- 01 Noroeste
- 02 Noreste
- 03 Madrid
- 04 Centro (E)
- 05 Este
- 06 Sur
- 07 Canarias

France

- 01 Ile de France
- 02 Bassin Parisien
- 03 Nord-Pas-de-Calais
- 04 Est
- 05 Ouest
- 06 Sud-Ouest
- 07 Centre-Est
- 08 Mediterranee
- 09 Departements D'Outre-Mer

Ireland

Italia

- 01 Nord Ovest
- 02 Lombardia
- 03 Nord Est
- 04 Emilia-Romagna
- 05 Centro (I)
- 06 Lazio
- 07 Abruzzo-Molise
- 08 Campania
- 09 Sud
- 10 Sicilia
- 11 Sardegna

Luxembourg (Grand-Duche)

Nederland

- 01 Noord-Nederland
- 02 Oost-Nederland
- 03 West-Nederland
- 04 Zuid-Nederland

Österreich

- 01 Ostösterreich
- 02 Südösterreich
- 03 Westösterreich

Portugal

- 01 Continente
- 02 Acores
- 03 Madeira

Suomi/Finland

- 01 Manner-Suomi
- 02 Aaland

Sverige

United Kingdom

- 1 North East
- 2 North West
- 3 Yorkshire and the Humber
- 4 East Midlands
- 5 West Midlands
- 6 Eastern
- 7 London
- 8 South East
- 9 South West
- 10 Wales
- 11 Scotland
- 12 Northern Ireland

HA09	Population density domain	1 Densely populated (at least 500 inhabitants/km ²) 2 Intermediate (between 100 and 499 inhabitants/km ²) 3 Sparsely populated (less than 100 inhabitants/km ²) 9 Not specified	9
------	---------------------------	--	---

As in the Labour Force Surveys, it is proposed to use the following codes:

- 1 = Densely-populated -> This is a contiguous set of local areas, each of which has a density exceeding to 500 inhabitants per square kilometre, and where the total population for the set is at least 50,000 inhabitants.
- 2 = Intermediate - > This is a contiguous set of local areas, not belonging to a densely-populated area, each of which has a density exceeding 100 inhabitants per square kilometre, and either with a total population for the set of at least 50,000 inhabitants or adjacent to a densely-populated area.
- 3 = Sparse populated: This is a contiguous set of local areas belonging neither to a densely-populated nor to an intermediate area.

MA10 HA10	Sample weight		9(6)V99
--------------	---------------	--	---------

The weighting of the sample applied by Eurostat is identical to that calculated by the Member States for the national publications of the survey results.¹⁹

2.1.1.2. Basic demographic characteristics of household members and the reference person²⁰

MB02 HC03	Sex of household member(s) Sex of reference person	1 male 2 female 9 not specified	9
--------------	---	---------------------------------------	---

MB03 HC04	Age (in completed years) of household members Age (in completed years) of reference person	00 ↓ 98 (98 years or over) 99 not specified	99
--------------	---	--	----

MB04 HC05	Marital status of household members Marital status of reference person	0 never married 1 married legally 2 cohabitation (consensual union) 3 widowed 4 divorced or separated 9 not specified	9
--------------	---	--	---

For this variable, some confusion could exist between the 'legal' (de jure) situation and 'actual' (de facto) situation. In this case, it is the 'de facto' situation which should be decisive. As follows:

- if a person is divorced, separated or widowed but living in a consensual union, he/she will be coded '2'.
- if a person has never been married and is not living in cohabitation at the time of the interview the code '0' has to be used.

¹⁹ For a general definition and categorisation of weighting see chapter 8. The special weighting methods used by individual Member States are described in Annex 1.

²⁰ The definitions of and distinctions between the reference person and the head of household are studied in chapter 4.

MB05	Relationship	1 head of household 2 spouse or partner 3 child of the head and/or of the spouse 4 parent of the head and/or of the spouse 5 other relative 6 no family relationship (e.g.: resident employee) 9 not specified	9
------	--------------	--	---

This variable is re-used in the construction of the type of household. It aims primarily at demonstrating immediate (nuclear) family relationships. In this case too, it is the 'de facto' situation which should be recorded. Thus an adopted child will be coded '3' rather than '5'.

2.1.1.3. Education

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

MC02	level of education currently being followed by household member	1 primary school and first phase of secondary education (ISCED = 1, 2) 2 second phase of secondary education (ISCED = 3) 3 higher education (ISCED = 5, 6, 7) 8 not applicable (no education followed) 9 not specified	9
------	---	--	---

This variable is an aggregation of the ISCED (International Standard Classification of Education) nomenclature:

- 1: this code corresponds to the education which is normally compulsory (ISCED = 1, 2).
- 2: intermediate level before higher level studies (ISCED = 3).
- 3: higher education (ISCED = 5, 6, 7).

We are maintaining the concept of studies underway at the members level because a large number of members are schoolchildren or students.

MC03	Level of studies completed by household members	<i>For 15-or more years-old persons</i> 0 none 1 primary school and first phase of secondary education (ISCED = 1, 2) 2 second phase of secondary education (ISCED = 3) 3 higher education (ISCED = 5, 6, 7) 8 not applicable (less than 15 years) 9 not specified	9
HC08	Level of studies completed by reference person		

This information is necessary only for individuals aged 15 or over, this should be the case for all reference persons (HC08).

2.1.1.4. Insurance

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

MD01.1	Health insurance	0 no insurance 1 compulsory insurance 2 voluntary insurance 3 compulsory and voluntary insurance 9 not specified	9
--------	------------------	--	---

Owing to the very limited comparability of the data in the field of health, it seems useful to develop this type of information by distinguishing a compulsory medical insurance from a voluntary insurance. Modality 3 groups persons who have both types of insurance.

HC09.1	Life insurance or retirement saving	0 no insurance 1 insurance 9 not specified	9
--------	-------------------------------------	--	---

In order to be taken into account, this type of insurance should contain a 'saving' component and the subscription should be on a voluntary basis by the household. It should equally be noted that this information is asked for at the household level.

2.1.1.6. Activity

Referring to the exhaustiveness of the database for 1988, it seems that it is the activity at the time of the interview (current) which is most frequently used in the Household Budget surveys. Nevertheless a major part of the data and in particular those on consumption refer to a 12-month period and it could be equally logical to take the usual activity (which could be defined as the activity which had the longest duration during the last 12 months). Taking into account these two parameters, the variable list allows some flexibility so as to be able to use either the current activity or the usual activity, according to information available in the Member States. In the medium term, it would be advisable to allow for information on usual activity in the countries where this is not the case at present.

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
ME01 HC12	Current activity status of household members Current activity status of the reference person	⇒ <i>economically active</i> 1 working 2 with employment but temporarily absent 3 unemployed ⇒ <i>economically inactive</i> 4 retired 5 student or in national service 6 non economic activity, housewife 7 unable to work 8 not applicable (legal age to work unfulfilled) 9 not specified	9

"Persons in employment" should be coded 1 or 2. Accordingly, persons temporarily absent from work are regarded as being "working" if they retain a formal link with their employment.

The category **"unemployed"** (code 3) is difficult to measure. According to the definition adopted in the Labour Force Surveys, which complies with the ILO recommended definition, being unemployed covers all persons having passed a specified age who, during the reference period, were:

- **"without work"**, i.e. who had neither a paid employment nor a unpaid employment;
- **"available for work"** in paid (or unpaid) employment;
- **"in search of work"**, i.e. who had made specific arrangements during a specified recent period to seek paid or unpaid employment.

All persons who are not classified as "working" or "unemployed" are considered to be inactive. The following categories of inactive can be distinguished:

- **pensioners (retired)** who have left their employment at the end of their active life;
- **students, persons performing their national service, 'home-bound' persons** engaged in various non economic activities;
- code 7 covers **persons unable to work** for physical or other involuntary reasons.

ME07	Usual activity status of household members	⇒ <i>economically active</i> 1 working (incl. temporarily away from job)	9
HC16	Usual activity status of reference person	3 unemployed ⇒ <i>economically inactive</i> 4 retired 5 student or in national service 6 non economic activity, housewife 7 unable to work 8 not applicable (legal age to work unattained) 9 not specified	

ME09	Occupation of household members (ISCO 1988 (COM))	01 Legislators, senior officials and managers 02 Professionals 03 Technicians and associate professionals 04 Clerks 05 Service workers and shop and market sales workers 06 Skilled agricultural and fishery workers 07 Craft and related trades workers 08 Plant and machine operators and assemblers 09 Elementary occupations 00 Armed forces 88 Not applicable (legal age to work unfulfilled) 99 Not specified	99
HC18	Occupation of reference person (ISCO 1988 (COM))		

ME12	Status in employment household members	1 employer 2 self-employed person 3 employee 4 unpaid family worker 5 apprentice 6 persons not classified by status 8 not applicable (legal age to work unfulfilled) 9 not specified	9
HC21	Status in employment of reference person		

ME13	Sector household members	1 public sector employee 2 private sector employee 8 not applicable (legal age not fulfilled or not an employee) 9 not specified	9
HC22	Sector reference person		

Despite the difficulties encountered in earlier rounds of the surveys, the distinction between employees in the public sector and in the private sector has been preserved owing to the differences in consumption behaviour and in income level that membership of the one or the other of the sectors could induce. This variable is used to construct the socio-economic situation of the individuals and of the reference person (ME14 and HC23).

2.1.1.7. Housing

Given that the Household Budget surveys are 'studies' on the living standard of households, the information collected on the conditions of the dwelling has a particular interest. The list of elements of comfort has been reduced significantly compared with previous Eurostat variables lists for the Household Budget surveys, since the recorded rates have often reached levels close to 100%.

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
HD01	Title (principal residence)	1 owned, no outstanding loan or mortgage 2 owned with outstanding loan or mortgage 3 rental (full rental) 4 reduced rental 5 rent free 9 not specified	9

The distinction between full rental, reduced rental or rent-free is interesting for the calculation of the benefits in kind of housing, even if, for the moment, reduced rental is not used for calculating an imputed rental.

In countries where the distinction between full rental and reduced rental poses problems, it is recommended using code 3.

HD03	Type of dwelling (principal residence)	1 detached house 2 semi-detached or terraced house 3 apartment 4 other 9 not specified	9
------	--	--	---

The category 'other' is a residual category which corresponds to households living in mobile homes or temporary accommodation.

HD06	Number of rooms (principal residence)	1 ↓ 7 8+ (= 8 rooms or more) 9 not specified	9
------	---------------------------------------	--	---

According to United Nations recommendations, 'normal bedrooms, dining rooms, living rooms, habitable cellars and attics, servants' rooms, kitchens and other separate spaces used or intended for habitation all count as rooms. A kitchenette (i.e. a kitchen of less than 4 m²), corridors, verandas, utility rooms (e.g. boiler rooms, laundry rooms) and lobbies do not count as rooms, nor do bathrooms and toilets (even if they are more than 4 m²)'.

HD07	Useful living area in m ² (principal residence)	001 ↓ 998 999 not specified	999
------	--	--------------------------------------	-----

The definition of the useful surface area is also drawn from the recommendations of the United Nations on housing statistics: 'Useful floor space is the floor space of dwellings measured inside the outer walls, excluding non-habitable cellars, attics and, in multi-dwelling houses, all common spaces'.

HD10.06	Telephone (principal residence)	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	---

HD10.07	Garage (principal residence)	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	------------------------------	----------------------------------	---

HD10.08	Second residence	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	------------------	----------------------------------	---

2.1.1.8. Possession of consumer durables

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES OR REMARKS	FORMAT
--------	---------------	----------------------------	--------

HD14.01	4 wheel car or vehicle	1 owned 2 available free of charge, provided by the employer, etc.(for personal use) 8 not available 9 not specified	9
---------	------------------------	---	---

For the comparative tabulation, categories 1 and 2 corresponds to 'yes' (1), and category 8 to 'no' (0). If there is not a sufficient degree of detail available at the national level, codes 1 and 8 should be used.

HD14.02	Number of cars	0 ↓ 3 4+ (4 or more cars) 9 not specified	9
---------	----------------	---	---

Including the principal car as described in HD14.01.

HD14.04	Number of televisions	0 ↓ 3 4+ (4 or more televisions) 9 not specified	9
---------	-----------------------	--	---

HD14.07	Video system (video-tape recorder and video recorder)	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	---	----------------------------------	---

HD14.08	Computer (PC)	0 no 1 yes without modem 2 yes with modem (with connection to Internet) 9 not specified	9
---------	---------------	--	---

If the distinction between the values '1' and '2' causes problems, then use code '1'. The use of a modem is intended to give information on this new means of communication.

HD14.09	Washing machine (at place of residence)	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	---	----------------------------------	---

HD14.11	Dishwasher	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	------------	----------------------------------	---

2.1.1.9. Income

The following remarks refer to the transfer of data on income:

- In countries where it is not possible to obtain very detailed information, the minimum objective is to provide Eurostat with the net disposable income of the household (HH09.9) by including its different components such as they are defined in chapter 6. However in the long term, it is desirable to provide the detail requested by Eurostat.
- When source of income does not concern any individual, but the household as a whole, it is allocated to the household's record. This is why property income, incomes in kind (except those from paid employment) and housing allowances are not indexed in the individual's record. Consequently, the sum of the individual incomes is not necessarily equal to the household's income.
- The amounts reported to Eurostat should be annualised (temporal weighting); the weighting of the sample is provided separately (HA10) and applied by Eurostat.
- The incomes of the household (HH) as well as the principal source of income (HI) could be regarded as derived variables insofar as their calculation does not pose any particular problem if the detail of the individual incomes is indicated correctly.
Nevertheless, as that has not been the case in the previous rounds of the surveys in all Member States, it is preferable to classify them as part of the basic variables.

Primary income and income from housing

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

(i) income from employment (for employees)

MF01.9 HH01.9	Total net income from employment	= MF01.1 + MF01.2 = HH01.1 + HH01.2	9(14)
------------------	----------------------------------	--	-------

(ii) income from non-salaried activity

HH02.9	Total income from self-employment	= HH02.2 + HH02.3	9(14)
--------	-----------------------------------	-------------------	-------

(iii) property income

HH03.1	Net income from property	after taxes and deductions incl. interest, distributed income from corporations, etc.	9(14)
--------	--------------------------	--	-------

(iv) income from housing (other than incomes of social character)

HH03.2*	Imputed rent	the owners' imputed rent and that of tenants living free of charge	9(14)
HH03.3	Net rental received by owners		
HH03.9	Total income from housing	= HH03.2 + HH03.3	9(14)

* By convention, the various types of imputed rents, whether it is for an owner or a tenant living free of charge, are included in this variable.

Secondary income (pensions, income of social character)

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

(i) pensions, retirements

MF04.9 HH04.9	Total net income of retirement and other pensions.		9(14)
------------------	--	--	-------

(ii) unemployment

MF05.9 HH05.9	Unemployment benefit	incl.. training courses (vocational training)	9(14)
------------------	----------------------	---	-------

(iii) other current benefits (net amount)

MF06.9 HH06.9	Total net income under other current benefits	= MF06.1 + MF06.2 + MF06.3 + MF06.5 = HH06.1 + HH06.2 + HH06.3 + HH06.4 + HH06.5	9(14)
------------------	---	---	-------

(iv) other income and current transfers

MF07.9 HH07.9	Total of other income and current transfers	= MF07.1 + MF07.2 - MF07.3 = HH07.1 + HH07.2 - HH07.3	9(14)
------------------	---	--	-------

Total income

MF09.9	Total income from all sources (net amount)	= MF01.9 + MF02.9 + MF04.9 + MF05.9 + MF06.9 + MF07.9	9(14)
--------	--	---	-------

HH09.1	Total income from all sources (net amount)	= HH01.9 + HH02.9 + HH03.1 + HH03.9 + HH04.9 + HH05.9 + HH06.9 + HH07.9	9(14)
--------	--	---	-------

HH09.2	Income tax	(not deducted at source)	9(14)
--------	------------	--------------------------	-------

HH09.9	Net income	= HH09.1 - HH09.2	9(14)
--------	------------	-------------------	-------

2.1.1.10. Main source of the household's income

HI11	Main source of income	1 wages or salary 2 income from self-employment 3 property income 4 pensions, retirement benefits 5 unemployment benefit 6 other current benefits and other income 9 not specified	9
------	-----------------------	--	---

HI12	Main source of income (primary / secondary)	1 primary (HI11 = 1, 2, 3) 2 secondary (HI11 = 4, 5, 6)	9
------	---	--	---

2.1.1.11. Household's expenditure : Twelve main divisions of the COICOP

HE01	Food and non-alcoholic beverages		9(14)
HE02	Alcoholic beverages, tobacco and narcotics		9(14)
HE03	Clothing and footwear		9(14)
HE04	Housing, water, electricity, gas and other fuels		9(14)
HE05	Furnishings, household equipment and routine household maintenance		9(14)

HE06	Health		9(14)
HE07	Transport		9(14)
HE08	Communication		9(14)
HE09	Recreation and culture		9(14)
HE10	Education		9(14)
HE11	Restaurants and hotels		9(14)
HE12	Miscellaneous goods and services		9(14)

In order to be able to give a more complete overview of the structure of consumption, in particular in the food sector and in the field of benefits in kind, consumption expenditure is distinguished into the three categories mentioned in chapter 4. Each of them is given a letter which is added to the original variable code:

“A” = expenditure effected in monetary form

“B” = expenditure effected in non-monetary form

“C” = total sum

The consumption expenditure variables included in the Simplified Data Base Version of HBS are exclusively of category C.

2.1.2. DERIVED VARIABLES

As specified before, the derived variables are constructed using the basic variables in order to make comparative tabulations. Their calculation is thus linked to specific needs of analysis; list includes only the variables most commonly used by Eurostat.

2.1.2.1. Household size and equivalent size

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
HB05	Household size	01-xx	99
HB06.1	Equivalent size (OECD scale)	01-xx,x	99V9

This variable is established by allocating weighting coefficients to the household's members according to their demographic characteristics. Given the existence of big differences in the sizes and structures of households, comparability can be improved by using expenditure or income by adult equivalent.

The OECD scale consists in allocating the following weightings to persons in the calculation of the "equivalent household's size".

- first adult in the household = 1.0
- each adult thereafter (aged over 13) = 0.7
- each child (13 or under) = 0.5

HB06.2	Equivalent size (modified OECD scale)	01-xx,x	99V9
--------	---------------------------------------	---------	------

The modified scale was developed on the basis of the argument that the original scale of the OECD gave relatively too much weight to additional persons.

- first adult in the household = 1.0
- each adult thereafter (aged over 13) = 0.5
- each child (13 or under) = 0.3

2.1.2.2. Type of household

The type of household (HB07) is an important variable in the Eurostat tabulation plan. It aims to improve comparability taking account of the different structures of households from one country to another. More variables defining the type of household are included in the data base in order to take into account this diversity of structures. Their calculation, carried out in successive stages, requires the determination of several intermediate variables either in the member record, or in the household record.

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
MB09.1	Categorisation of the household's members (1)	1 young child from 0 to 13 years 2 child aged from 14 to 16 years 3 'older child' 4 'adult child' 5 adults not living in union 6 adults living in union 9 not specified	9

The construction of this variable is done by using the variables 'age' (MB03), 'education' (MC02), 'marital status' (MB04) and 'relationship link' (MB05). The distinction between an 'older' and an 'adult' child essentially depends whether or not some form of training is being followed. A person aged 21 or under and following training is considered to be an 'older child'. A person aged 18 or over, living with the parent(s) and not following training is coded as an 'adult child'.

MB09.2	Categorisation of the household's members (2)	1 young child from 0 to 18 years 2 adult child 3 adults not living in union 4 adults living in union 9 not specified	9
--------	---	--	---

HB02.1	Children up to 13 years	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.2	Children aged 14 to 16	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.3	'Older' children	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.4	'Adult' children	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.5	Adults not living in union	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.6	Adults living in union	00 to 98 99 not specified	99

The variables HB02.1 to HB02.6 are constructed by counting the number of observations under each code in variable MB09.1.

HB02.7	Children up to 18 years (inclusive)	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.8	'Adult' children	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.9	Adults not living in union	00 to 98 99 not specified	99
HB02.10	Adults living in union	00 to 98 99 not specified	99

The variables HB02.7 to HB02.10 are constructed by counting the number of observations under each code in variable MB09.2.

HB07.1	Type of household (1)	<p>⇒ <i>one adult household</i></p> <p>01 one person, aged 65 years or more 02 one person, aged 30 to 64 years 03 one person, under 30 years 04 one person with children up to 16 years old</p> <p>⇒ <i>couple without children</i></p> <p>05 couple without children, older member aged 65 or more 06 couple without children, older member under 65 years</p> <p>⇒ <i>couple with children aged up to 16</i></p> <p>07 one child 08 two children 09 three or more children</p> <p>⇒ <i>other</i></p> <p>10 single parent or couple with at least one child more than 16 years of age 11 other households with all members related 12 other households with one or more members without being related</p>	99
--------	-----------------------	--	----

For the modalities 05 and 06, the oldest person of the couple should be taken as the reference person.

HB07.2	Type of household (2)	<p>⇒ <i>one adult household</i></p> <p>01 one person, aged 65 years or more 02 one person, aged 30 to 64 years 03 one person, under 30 years 04 one person with children aged up to 18 years old</p> <p>⇒ <i>couple without children</i></p> <p>05 couple without children, older person aged 65 or more 06 couple without children, older person under 65 years</p> <p>⇒ <i>couple with children aged up to 18 years old</i></p> <p>07 one child 08 two children 09 three or more children</p> <p>⇒ <i>other</i></p> <p>10 single parent or couple with at least one child of more than 18 years of age 11 other households with all members related 12 other households with one or more members without being related</p>	99
--------	-----------------------	--	----

HB07.3	Household type (abbreviated)	1 one person or couple aged 65 years old or more (HB07.1 = 01, 05) 2 other households with one person or couple without any children (HB07.1 = 02, 03, 06). 3 couple or single parent, with children up to 16 years old (HB07.1 = 04, 07, 08, 09). 4 others (HB07.1 = 10,11,12)	9
--------	------------------------------	--	---

The new household type use only two criteria: number of adults and number of dependant children.
 Dependant child is :

- < 16
- greater or equal 16 and less or equal 24 not working and not unemployed

HB07.4	Household type	1 one adult 2 two adults 3 more than 2 adults 4 one adult with dependent children 5 two adults with dependent children 6 more than 2 adults with dependent children 9 other	9
--------	----------------	---	---

2.1.2.3. Activity and economic situation

The variables on activity and economic situation of the household also have a special importance insofar as they make it possible to categorise the households according to characteristics leading to different behaviour as regards consumption expenditure.

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
ME14	Socio-economic situation of household members	⇒ <i>Private sector</i> 01 manual worker except agriculture 02 non-manual worker except agriculture	99
HC23	Socio-economic situation of the reference person	⇒ <i>Public sector</i> 03 manual worker except agriculture 04 non-manual worker except agriculture ⇒ <i>Other</i> 05 self-employed person except agriculture 06 farmer or agricultural worker 07 unemployed 08 retired 09 student or in national service 10 housewife or person engaged in a non-economic activity 11 unable to work 88 not applicable (legal age to work unattained) 99 not specified	

ME15	Socio-economic situation (aggregated classification) of household members	01 manual worker except agriculture (ME14/HC23=01, 03) 02 non-manual worker except agriculture (ME14/HC23=02, 04) 03 self-employed person and farmer or agricultural worker (ME14/HC23=05, 06) 04 unemployed (ME14/HC23=07) 05 retired (ME14/HC23=08) 06 other inactive (ME14/HC23=09, 10, 11) 88 not applicable (legal age to work not attained) 99 not specified	99
HC24	Socio-economic situation of reference person (aggregated classification)		

HD15	Economic situation (active occupied)	1 both head and spouse working, at least one other member also usually working 2 both head and spouse working, no other member usually working 3 either the head or spouse working, at least one other member usually working 4 either the head or spouse work, no other member usually working 5 neither the head nor spouse working, at least two other members usually working 6 neither the head nor spouse working, one other member usually working 7 none working in the household	9
------	--------------------------------------	---	---

This variable is defined so that no distinction is made between the head of household and his spouse which allows to take into account the situation of the whole household and not only the household in relation to the reference person.

HD16	Number of members active occupied (abbreviated classification)	0 1 2+	9
------	--	--------------	---

HD17	Number of members active occupied (detailed classification)	0 1 2 3 4 5 or more	9
------	---	------------------------------------	---

The two variables above are constructed via counting the number of persons employed in the household (number of ME01 = 1, 2).

HD18: economic situation (active)

HD19: number of active / abbreviated classification

HD20: number of active / detailed classification

HD18, HD19 and HD20 are constructed in the same way as the previous variables (HD15, HD16, HD17) but by adding the members who have declared themselves as 'unemployed' to the active (ME01 or ME07 = 1,2,3). The possible values are equal to those described above.

2.2. THE REMAINING VARIABLES

2.2.1 The basic variables

MA01 HA01	Country code	01 Belgium (B) 02 Denmark (DK) 03 Germany (D) 04 Greece (GR.) 05 Spain (E) 06 France (F) 07 Ireland (IRL) 08 Italy (I) 09 Luxembourg (L) 10 Netherlands (NL) 11 Austria (A) 12 Portugal (P) 13 Finland (FIN) 14 Sweden (S) 15 United Kingdom (UK) 16 Iceland (IS) 18 Norway (N) 19 Switzerland (SC)	9(2)
--------------	--------------	--	------

MA03 HA03	Survey subround	0 ↓ 8 9 Not specified	9
--------------	-----------------	--------------------------------	---

Most of the surveys are divided into subrounds, each normally lasting several weeks and covering a representative sample of households. In a certain number of surveys, the subrounds are defined as a function of the total recording period.

MA06 HA06	Stratum	01 ↓ 98 99 Not specified	99
--------------	---------	-----------------------------------	----

Normally the number of strata is less than provided for above.

MA07 HA07	Primary sampling unit	01 ↓ 98 99 Not specified	99
--------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------------	----

MA12	Date of interview	yyyymmdd	9(8)
------	-------------------	----------	------

The interview concerned is the one where the list of members of the household is established and where the information on their characteristics is obtained. If there is more than one interview for obtaining this information, then one must be chosen as the principal.

HC00	Identification of the reference person	1 head of household 2 spouse/partner of head 3 other person	9
------	--	---	---

HC01	Line number of the reference person	MA05	99
------	-------------------------------------	------	----

Two cases have to be distinguished for these two variables:

- If the definition of the head of household as it is applied at the national level uses as a principal criterion the concept of the highest income or the biggest contributor to the budget, the reference person and the head of household (defined in variable MB05) are the same person (HC 00 will be equal to 1).
- If the definition of the head of household does not use as a principal criteria the concept of the highest income or the biggest contributor to the budget, it is necessary to recompute a reference person by choosing the person in the household who fulfil the criteria. This can be done in two ways:
 - either by using the individual income data when they are of high quality;
 - or by asking a specific question in order to identify this person (ex: 'who receives the highest income within your household?').

MB01	Situation of the household's members (residential status)	1 present, related to the head or with the spouse 2 domestic employee (being a member of the household) 3 absent but is a member of the household (for example a student) 4 person not connected with the household or visitor 9 not specified	9
------	---	--	---

The simplification of the codes for this variable has the objective of delimiting the differences in definitions of the household from one Member State to another. Among the codes, the following individual cases can be noted :

- 1: this code is normally allocated to a person present in the household and connected economically with the head of the household, although there may be no family relationship.
- 2: a domestic employee being a member of the household must at least live under the same roof as the household under consideration. If this is not the case, the code should be 4.
- 3: a student not residing at the same place as the household, but forming part of it should depend financially on the household.
- 4: a person not connected economically with the household should normally not be taken into account as a household member. Either the person forms a separate household or is part of another household.
- 9: in the absence of information, the individual should be coded as a household member

HC07	Level attending of reference person	1 primary school and first phase of secondary education (ISCED = 1, 2) 2 second phase of secondary education (ISCED = 3) 3 higher education (ISCED = 5, 6, 7) 8 not applicable (no education followed) 9 not specified	9
------	-------------------------------------	--	---

This variable is an aggregation of the ISCED (International Standard Classification of Education) nomenclature:

- 1: this code corresponds to the education which is normally compulsory (ISCED = 1, 2).
- 2: intermediate level before higher level studies (ISCED = 3).
- 3: higher education (ISCED = 5, 6, 7).

ME03 HC13	Hours worked by household members Hours worked by reference person	1 full time 2 part-time 8 not applicable 9 not specified	9
--------------	---	---	---

The distinction between full and part-time work is specific to each Member State.

ME04 HC14	Type of work contract of individuals Type of work contract for the reference person	1 permanent employment or contract of indeterminate length 2 temporary employment or contract of fixed length 3 occasional work without contract 8 not applicable (do not work) 9 not specified	9
--------------	--	---	---

This typology refers to the Labour Force Survey and the European Community Household Panel.

ME08 HC17	Reference activity of household members Reference activity of reference person	1 current work 2 usual work 8 not applicable (legal age to work unattained) 9 not specified	9
--------------	---	--	---

The reference activity required in this variable is the activity which serves as a base for the calculation of the socio-economic situation (ME14, ME15, HC23, HC24) and which is also used to determine the following variables.

Code 8 does not apply to variable HC17.

HD02	Form of renting (principal residence)	1 unfurnished 2 furnished 8 not applicable (owner occupied) 9 not specified	9
------	---------------------------------------	--	---

HD04	Year of construction (principal residence)	1 before 1946 2 1946-1960 3 1961-1980 4 1981-1995 5 1996 and after 9 not specified	9
------	--	---	---

HD08	Year of purchase or of acquisition of dwelling (principal residence)	19-- year 8888 not applicable 9999 not specified	9(4)
------	--	--	------

HD09.1	Purchase price (principal residence)	in national currency 0: not owner occupied or free ↓ 99 999 999 999 999 . : not specified	9(14)
--------	--------------------------------------	---	-------

HD09.2	Value of dwelling(s) possessed by the household	in national currency 0: no real estate ↓ 99 999 999 999 999 . : not specified	9(14)
--------	---	---	-------

This variable is created in order to give information on the most important asset of households.

The value of dwellings correspond to the estimated cumulated value of the principal and/or the secondary residence depending on if the household owns the one or the other (or both). This estimation should be done at market price (the price for which the dwelling could be sold) or, by default, the fiscal value. If the household is buying the property, it is the value of the dwelling after deduction of the outstanding amount of mortgage.

HD11	Location second residence	1 (at least one) abroad 2 only within the country of residence 8 no second residence 9 not specified	9
------	---------------------------	---	---

HD14.13	Refrigerator (including a deep-freezer compartment)	0 no 1 yes 9 not specified	9
---------	---	----------------------------------	---

Primary income and income from housing

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

(i) income from employment (for employees)

MF01.1 HH01.1	Net earnings	including other income connected with employment as overtime, tips, commission etc.	9(14)
------------------	--------------	---	-------

MF01.2 HH01.2	Income in kind	advantages provided within the framework of paid employment (except imputed rent. (see HH03.2))	9(14)
------------------	----------------	---	-------

(ii) income from non-salaried activity

MF02.1 HH02.1	Gross income of self-employed persons	compulsory if the net-income is not stated (MF02.2/HH02.2)	9(14)
MF02.2 HH02.2	Net income of self-employed person	after tax and deductions	9(14)
HH02.3	Income in kind	incl. withdrawals from own garden, farm or enterprise for the household's private consumption excl. imputed rent (HH03.2)	9(14)

Secondary income (pensions, income of social character)

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
--------	---------------	-----------------	--------

(iii) other current benefits (net amount)

MF06.1 HH06.1	Pensions for widows and orphans		9(14)
MF06.2 HH06.2	Income connected with the family (family benefits, maternity, single parent benefit etc.)		9(14)
MF06.3 HH06.3	Benefits connected with illness or disability		9(14)
HH06.4	Benefits in relation to housing situation		9(14)
MF06.5 HH06.5	Other benefits (e.g. student grants, minimum income)		9(14)

(iv) other income and current transfers

MF07.1 HH07.1	Other income		9(14)
MF07.2 HH07.2	Total of transfers received		9(14)
MF07.3 HH07.3	Total of transfers executed	including donations to charity, fines and penalties	9(14)

2.2.2. DERIVED VARIABLES

The variables which follow are constructed by aggregating the consumption expenditure of the COICOP-HBS nomenclature which is given in further detail in this chapter.0

For the countries which are in the euro-zone, the national currency is the euro.

VAR N°	VARIABLE NAME	POSSIBLE VALUES	FORMAT
HF13	Total consumption expenditure; survey year prices	national currency 1.00 ↓ 99 999 999 999 999,99	9(14)V99

The total consumption expenditure is equal to the sum of variable HE (and thus to HE0)

HF14.1	Total consumption expenditure; reference year prices	national currency 1.00 ↓ 99 999 999 999 999,99	9(14)V99
--------	--	---	----------

The above variable is used for the comparisons of total consumption expenditure for Eurostat's reference year. If a Member State has a different survey year to Eurostat's reference year, the consumption expenditure values are corrected by using the consumer price index as a deflator .

HF14.2	Total consumption expenditure for the reference year prices	in euro 1.00 ↓ 99 999 999 999 999,99	9(14)V99
--------	---	---	----------

Official exchange rate

HF14.3	Total consumption expenditure for the reference year prices	in purchasing power standards (expressed in euro) 1.00 ↓ 99 999 999 999 999,99	9(14)V99
--------	---	---	----------

The use of the Purchasing Power Standards (PPS) makes it possible to eliminate the distortions due to different levels of prices from one country to another and is therefore very useful when making international comparisons of expenditure data

**CLASSIFICATION OF INDIVIDUAL CONSUMPTION
BY PURPOSE (COICOP-HBS) WITH
EXPLANATORY NOTES**

CLASSIFICATION OF INDIVIDUAL CONSUMPTION BY PURPOSE (COICOP-HBS)^{1 2}

BREAKDOWN BY DIVISION (TWO-DIGIT LEVEL), GROUP (THREE-DIGIT LEVEL), CLASS (FOUR-DIGIT LEVEL) AND CATEGORY (FIVE-DIGIT LEVEL)

00. TOTAL CONSUMPTION EXPENDITURE

01. FOOD AND NON-ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES

01.1. Food

The food products classified here are those generally purchased for consumption at home. The group thus excludes food products normally sold for immediate consumption by hotels, restaurants, cafés, bars, kiosks, street vendors, automatic vending machines, etc. (11.1.1). Also excluded are cooked take-away dishes and the products of prepared-food suppliers and catering contractors, even if they are delivered to the customer's home (11.1.1). Products sold specifically as pet foods are covered by (09.3.4).

01.1.1. Bread and cereals (ND)

01.1.1.1. Rice

- Rice in all forms, including rice prepared with meat, fish, seafood or vegetables.
(d = kilo)

01.1.1.2. Bread

- Bread and other bakery products such as crispbread, rusks, toasted bread, biscuits, gingerbread, wafers, waffles, crumpets, muffins and croissants.
(d = kilo)

01.1.1.3. Pasta products

- Pasta products in all forms, including pasta products containing meat, fish, seafood, cheese or vegetables.
(d = kilo)

01.1.1.4. Pastry-cook products

- Pastry-cook products such as cakes, tarts, pies, quiches and pizzas.

01.1.1.5. Other products

- Maize, wheat, barley, oats, rye and other cereals in the form of grains, flour or meal;
- other products such as malt, malt flour, malt extract, potato starch, tapioca, sago, other starches, cereal preparations (cornflakes, oat flakes, etc.) and dietary products and culinary ingredients based on flour, starch or malt extract.

¹ Most Classes comprise either goods or services. Classes containing goods are denoted by either (ND), (SD) or (D), indicating either 'non-durable', 'semi-durable' or 'durable' respectively. (S) denotes Classes consisting of 'services'. Some Classes contain both goods and services because of the difficulty of distinguishing between them. Such Classes are usually assigned an (S), as the service component is considered to be predominant.

² Based on the final COICOP classification as prepared by the OECD after consultation with Eurostat, UNSD and the national statistical agencies of its Member Countries in October 1998 and approved in March 1999.

Includes: couscous and similar farinaceous products prepared with meat, fish, seafood or vegetables (01.1.1.5); mixes and doughs for the preparation of bakery products or pastry-cook products (01.1.1.5).

Excludes: meat pies (01.1.2); fish pies (01.1.3); sweetcorn (01.1.7).

01.1.2. Meat (ND)

01.1.2.1. Fresh, chilled or frozen meat of bovine animals

(d = kilo)

01.1.2.2. Fresh, chilled or frozen meat of swine

(d = kilo)

01.1.2.3. Fresh, chilled or frozen meat of sheep and goat

(d = kilo)

01.1.2.4. Fresh, chilled or frozen meat of poultry

- Chicken, duck, goose, turkey, guinea fowl, etc.

(d = kilo)

01.1.2.5. Dried, salted or smoked meat and edible meat offal

- Sausages, salami, bacon, ham, pâté, etc.

(d = kilo)

01.1.2.6. Other preserved or processed meat and meat preparations

- Canned meat, meat extracts, meat juices, meat pies, etc.

(d = kilo)

01.1.2.7. Other fresh, chilled or frozen edible meat

- Hare, rabbit and game (antelope, deer, boar, pheasant, grouse, pigeon, quail, etc.);

- horse, mule, donkey, camel and the like.

(d = kilo)

Includes: meat and edible offal of marine mammals (seals, walruses, whales, etc. / 01.1.2.7) and exotic animals (kangaroo, ostrich, alligator, etc.), animals and poultry purchased live for consumption as food.

Excludes: farinaceous products containing meat (01.1.1); frogs, land and sea snails (01.1.3); soups containing meat (01.1.9); lard and other edible animal fats (01.1.5).

01.1.3. Fish (ND)

01.1.3.1. Fresh, chilled or frozen fish

(d = kilo)

01.1.3.2. Fresh, chilled or frozen seafood

- Crustaceans, including land crabs, molluscs and other shellfish, land and sea snails, frogs.

(d = kilo)

01.1.3.3. Dried, smoked or salted fish and seafood

(d = kilo)

01.1.3.4. Other preserved or processed fish and seafood and fish and seafood preparations

- Canned fish and seafood, caviar and other hard roes, fish pies, etc.
(d = kilo)

Includes: fish and seafood purchased live for consumption as food.
Excludes: farinaceous products containing fish (01.1.1); fish soups (01.1.9).

01.1.4. Milk, cheese and eggs (ND)

01.1.4.1. Whole milk

- Raw, pasteurised or sterilised.
(d = litre)

01.1.4.2. Low-fat milk

- Raw, pasteurised or sterilised.
(d = litre)

01.1.4.3. Preserved milk

- Condensed, evaporated or powdered.
(d = kilo)

01.1.4.4. Yoghurt

(d = kilo)

01.1.4.5. Cheese and curd

(d = kilo)

01.1.4.6. Other milk products

- Cream, milk-based desserts, milk-based beverages and other similar milk-based products.
(d = kilo)

01.1.4.7. Eggs

- Poultry eggs, egg powder and other egg products made wholly from eggs.
(d = unit)

Includes: milk, cream and yoghurt containing sugar, cocoa, fruit or flavourings, dairy products not based on milk such as soya milk.
Excludes: butter and butter products (01.1.5).

01.1.5. Oils and fats (ND)

01.1.5.1. Butter

- Butter oil, ghee, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.5.2. Margarine and other vegetable fats

- Including “diet” margarine and peanut butter.
(d = kilo)

01.1.5.3. Olive oil

(d = litre)

01.1.5.4. Edible oils

- Corn oil, sunflower-seed oil, cottonseed oil, soybean oil, groundnut oil, walnut oil, etc.
(d = litre)

01.1.5.5. Other edible animal fats

- Lard, etc.
(d = kilo)

Excludes: cod or halibut liver oil (06.1.1).

01.1.6. Fruit (ND)

01.1.6.1. Citrus fruits (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Orange, lemon, mandarin, grapefruit, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.6.2. Bananas (fresh, chilled or frozen)

(d = kilo)

01.1.6.3. Apples (fresh, chilled or frozen)

(d = kilo)

01.1.6.4. Pears (fresh, chilled or frozen)

(d = kilo)

01.1.6.5. Stone fruits (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Apricot, plum, peach, avocado, cherry, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.6.6. Berries (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Grapes, strawberries, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.6.7. Other fresh, chilled or frozen fruits

- Other tropical fruits, melon, watermelon, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.6.8. Dried fruit

- Including fruit peel, fruit kernels, nuts and edible seeds.
(d = kilo)

01.1.6.9. Preserved fruit and fruit-based products

- Dietary preparations and culinary ingredients based exclusively on fruit.
(d = kilo)

Excludes: vegetables grown for their fruit such as tomatoes, cucumbers and aubergines (01.1.7); jams, marmalades, compotes, jellies, fruit purées and pastes (01.1.8); parts of plants preserved in sugar (01.1.8); fruit juices (01.2.2); fruit concentrates and syrups for culinary use (01.1.9) or for the preparation of beverages (01.2.2).

01.1.7. Vegetables (ND)

01.1.7.1. Leaf and stem vegetables (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Lettuce, chicory, endive, celery, cress, spinach, parsley, fennel, etc.

01.1.7.2. Cabbages (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Broccoli, cauliflower, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.7.3. Vegetables cultivated for their fruit (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Cucumber, tomato, aubergine, courgette, sweetcorn, beans, green peppers, pumpkin, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.7.4. Root crops, non-starchy bulbs and mushrooms (fresh, chilled or frozen)

- Carrot, beetroot, radish, turnip, onion, parsnip, leek, asparagus, artichoke, etc.
(d = kilo)

01.1.7.5. Dried vegetables

(d = kilo)

01.1.7.6. Other preserved or processed vegetables

- Vegetable-based products, dietary preparations and culinary ingredients based exclusively on vegetables.
(d = kilo)

01.1.7.7. Potatoes

(d = kilo)

01.1.7.8. Other tubers and products of tuber vegetables

- Manioc, arrowroot, cassava, sweet potatoes and other starchy roots;
- flours, meals, flakes, purées, chips and crisps, including frozen preparations such as chipped potatoes.
(d = kilo)

Includes: sea fennel and other edible seaweed, other edible fungi.

Excludes: potato starch, tapioca, sago and other starches (01.1.1); soups, broths and stocks (01.1.9); ginger, pimento and other spices and condiments, culinary herbs (parsley, rosemary, thyme, etc.) (01.1.9); vegetable juices (01.2.2).

01.1.8. Sugar, jam, honey, chocolate and confectionery (ND)

01.1.8.1. Sugar

- Cane or beet sugar, unrefined or refined, powdered, crystallised or in lumps.
(d = kilo)

01.1.8.2. Jams, marmalades

- Including compotes, jellies, fruit purées and pastes, natural and artificial honey.
(d = kilo)

01.1.8.3. Chocolate

- In bars or slabs.
(d = kilo)

01.1.8.4. Confectionery products

- Chewing gum, sweets, toffees, pastilles and other.

01.1.8.5. Edible ices and ice cream

- Including sorbet.
(d = litre)

01.1.8.6. Other sugar products

- Syrups and molasses, including parts of plants preserved in sugar;
- cocoa-based foods and cocoa-based dessert preparations.

Includes: artificial sugar substitutes (01.1.8.1).

Excludes: cocoa and chocolate-based powder (01.2.1); syrups for the preparation of beverages (01.2.2).

01.1.9. Food products n.e.c. (ND)

01.1.9.1. Sauces, condiments

- Seasonings (mustard, mayonnaise, ketchup, soy sauce, etc.), vinegar.

01.1.9.2. Salt, spices and culinary herbs

- Salt, spices, ginger, pimento and culinary herbs (parsley, rosemary, thyme, etc.).

01.1.9.3. Baker's yeast, dessert preparations, soups

- Homogenised babyfood and dietary preparations irrespective of the composition;
- prepared baking powders, baker's yeast, dessert preparations, soup, broths, stocks, etc.

01.1.9.4. Other food products n.e.c.

Excludes: milk-based dessert preparations (01.1.4); soya milk (01.1.4); artificial sugar substitute and cocoa-based dessert preparations (01.1.8).

01.2. Non-alcoholic beverages

The non-alcoholic beverages classified here are those generally purchased for consumption at home. The group thus excludes non-alcoholic beverages normally sold for immediate consumption by hotels, restaurants, cafés, bars, kiosks, street vendors, automatic vending machines, etc. (11.1.1).

01.2.1. Coffee, tea and cocoa (ND)

01.2.1.1. Coffee

- Whether or not decaffeinated, roasted or ground, including instant coffee, coffee extracts and essences and coffee substitutes.
(d = kilo)

01.2.1.2. Tea

- Including maté and other plant products for infusions.
(d = kilo)

01.2.1.3. Cocoa and powdered chocolate

- Whether or not sweetened.
(d = kilo)

Includes: preparations for beverages containing cocoa, milk, malt, etc.; coffee and tea substitutes; extracts and essences of coffee and tea.

01.2.2. Mineral waters, soft drinks, fruit and vegetable juices (ND)

01.2.2.1. Mineral or spring waters

(d = litre)

01.2.2.2. Soft drinks

- Such as sodas, lemonades and colas.
(d = litre)

01.2.2.3. Fruit juices

- Including syrups and concentrates for the preparation of beverages.
(d = litre)

01.2.2.4. Vegetable juices

(d = litre)

Includes: all drinking water sold in containers.

Excludes: non-alcoholic spirits, liqueurs, etc. (02.1.1); non-alcoholic wine, cider, etc. (02.1.2) and non-alcoholic beer (02.1.3).

02. ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES, TOBACCO AND NARCOTICS

02.1. Alcoholic beverages

The alcoholic beverages classified here are those generally purchased for consumption at home. The group thus excludes alcoholic beverages normally sold for immediate consumption by hotels, restaurants, cafés, bars, kiosks, street vendors, automatic vending machines, etc. (11.1.1).

The beverages classified here include low- or non-alcoholic varieties of beverages which are generally alcoholic, such as non-alcoholic beer.

02.1.1. Spirits (ND)

02.1.1.1. *Spirits and liqueurs.*

- Mead; aperitifs other than wine-based aperitifs; non-alcoholic spirits, liqueurs, eaux-de-vie, etc.
(d = litre)

02.1.2. Wine (ND)

02.1.2.1. *Wine from grapes or other fruit*

- Including cider and perry, fortified wine.
(d = litre)

02.1.2.2. *Other*

- Wine-based aperitifs, champagne and other sparkling wines, sake and the like.
(d = litre)

<i>Includes:</i> non-alcoholic wine, etc.

02.1.3. Beer (ND)

02.1.3.1. *Beer*

- All kinds of beer such as ale, lager and porter;
- including low-alcoholic beer and non-alcoholic beer, shandy.
(d = litre)

02.2. Tobacco

02.2.1. Tobacco (ND)

02.2.1.1. *Cigarettes*

(d = unit)

02.2.1.2. *Cigars*

(d = unit)

02.2.1.3. Other tobacco

- Pipe tobacco, chewing tobacco or snuff;
- cigarette tobacco and cigarette papers.

Includes: purchases of tobacco in cafés, bars, restaurants, service stations, etc.
Excludes: other smokers' articles (12.3.2.)

02.3. Narcotics

02.3.1. Narcotics (ND)

02.3.1.1. Narcotics

- Marijuana, opium, cocaine and their derivatives;
- other vegetable-based narcotics such as cola nuts, betel and betel nuts;
- other narcotics, including chemicals and man-made drugs.

03. CLOTHING AND FOOTWEAR

03.1. Clothing

03.1.1. Clothing materials (SD)

03.1.1.1. Clothing materials

- Fabrics of natural fibres, of man-made fibres and of mixtures of natural and man-made fibres.

Excludes: furnishing fabrics (05.2.1).

03.1.2. Garments (SD)

03.1.2.1. Garments for men

Either ready-to-wear or made-to-measure, in all materials (including leather, fur, plastic and rubber), for everyday wear, for sport or for work:

- capes, overcoats, raincoats, anoraks, parkas, blousons, etc.;
- jackets, trousers, waistcoats, costumes, tailored suits, etc.;
- shirts, blouses, pullovers, sweaters, cardigans, etc.;
- shorts, tracksuits, jogging suits, sweatshirts, leotards etc.;
- T-shirts, vests, underpants, socks, stockings, tights, knickers, girdles, corsets;
- pyjamas, nightshirts, housecoats, dressing gowns, bathrobes and swimsuits.

03.1.2.2. Garments for women

Either ready-to-wear or made-to-measure, in all materials (including leather, fur, plastic and rubber), for everyday wear, for sport or for work (same as 03.1.2.1):

- dresses, skirts.

03.1.2.3. Garments for children (3 to 13 years) and infants (0 to 2 years)

Either ready-to-wear or made-to-measure, in all materials (including leather, fur, plastic and rubber), for everyday wear or for sport (same as 03.1.2.2):

- brassieres;
- babyclothes, including babies' napkins made of fabric and babies' booties made of fabric.

Excludes: articles of medical hosiery such as elasticated stockings (06.1.2); babies' napkins (12.1.3).

03.1.3. Other articles of clothing and clothing accessories (SD)

03.1.3.1. Other articles of clothing and clothing accessories

- Ties, handkerchiefs, scarves, squares, gloves, mittens, muffs, belts, braces, aprons, smocks, bibs, sleeve protectors, hats, caps, berets, bonnets, crash helmets;
- sewing threads, knitting wools and accessories for making clothing such as buckles, buttons, press studs, zip fasteners, ribbons, laces, trimmings, etc.

Includes: gardening gloves and working gloves.

Excludes: gloves and other articles made of rubber (05.6.1); pins, sewing and knitting needles, thimbles (05.6.1); protective sports headgear (such as used in ice hockey, American football, baseball, cricket, cycling, boxing, etc.) (09.3.2); other protective sports gear such as life jackets, boxing gloves, shin-guards, pads and padding, goggles, belts, etc. (09.3.2); paper handkerchiefs (12.1.3); watches, jewellery, cuff links, tiepins (12.3.1); walking sticks and canes, umbrellas, fans, key-rings (12.3.2).

03.1.4. Cleaning, repair and hire of clothing (S)

03.1.4.1. Cleaning, repair and hire of clothing

- Dry-cleaning, laundering and dyeing of garments;
- darning, mending, repair and altering of garments;
- hire of garments.

Includes: total value of the repair services (that is, both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are covered).

Excludes: material, threads, accessories, etc. purchased by households with the intention of undertaking the repairs themselves (03.1.1) or (03.1.3); repair of household linen and other household textiles (05.2.1); dry-cleaning, laundering and dyeing of household linen and household textiles (05.6.2); hire of household linen (05.6.2).

03.2. Footwear

03.2.1. Shoes and other footwear (SD)

03.2.1.1. Footwear for men

- Including sports footwear suitable for everyday or leisure wear (shoes for jogging, cross-training, tennis, basketball, boating, etc.);
- parts of footwear (heels, soles, etc.).

03.2.1.2. Footwear for women

- Same as 03.2.1.1.

03.2.1.3. Footwear for children (3 to 13 years) and infants (0 to 2 years)

- Same as 03.2.1.1.

Includes: gaiters, leggings and similar articles; accessories for footwear such as shoetrees and stretchers.

Excludes: babies' booties made of fabric (03.1.2); orthopaedic footwear (06.1.3); game-specific footwear (bowling shoes, football boots, golfing shoes, running spikes, ski boots, footwear fitted with ice skates or rollers, etc.) (09.3.2); shin-guards, cricket pads and other protective sports apparel(09.3.2).

03.2.2. Repair and hire of footwear (S)

03.2.2.1. Repair and hire of footwear

- Repair of footwear, including shoe-cleaning services;
- hire of footwear, except game-specific footwear (bowling shoes, football boots, golfing shoes, running spikes, ski boots, footwear fitted with ice skates or rollers, etc.) (09.4.1).

Includes: total value of the repair services (that is, both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are covered).

Excludes: parts of footwear, such as heels, soles, etc., purchased by households with the intention of undertaking the repair themselves (03.2.1); polishes, creams and other shoe-cleaning articles (05.6.1); repair (09.3.2) or hire (09.4.1.) of game-specific footwear (ski boots, football boots, golfing shoes and other such footwear fitted with ice skates, rollers, spikes, studs, etc.).

04. HOUSING, WATER, ELECTRICITY, GAS AND OTHER FUELS

04.1. Actual rentals for housing

Rentals normally include payment for the use of the land on which the property stands, the dwelling occupied, the fixtures and fittings for heating, plumbing, lighting, etc., and, in the case of a dwelling let furnished, the furniture.

Rentals also include payment for the use of a garage to provide parking in connection with the dwelling. The garage does not have to be physically contiguous to the dwelling; nor does it have to be leased from the same landlord.

Rentals do not include payment for the use of garages or parking spaces not providing parking in connection with the dwelling (07.2.4). Nor do they include charges for water supply (04.4.1), refuse collection (04.4.2) and sewerage collection (04.4.3); co-proprietor charges for caretaking, gardening, stairwell cleaning, heating and lighting, maintenance of lifts and refuse disposal chutes, etc. in multi-occupied buildings (04.4.4); charges for electricity (04.5.1) and gas (04.5.2); charges for heating and hot water supplied by district heating plants (04.5.5).

04.1.1. Actual rentals paid by tenants (S)

04.1.1.1. Actual rentals paid by tenants

- Rentals actually paid by tenants or subtenants occupying unfurnished or furnished premises as their main residence.

Includes: payment for the use of the furniture in the case of dwellings let furnished; payments by households occupying a room in a hotel or boarding house as their main residence.

Excludes: rentals for garages or parking spaces not providing parking in connection with the dwelling (07.2.4); accommodation services of educational establishments and hostels (11.2.1) and of retirement homes for elderly persons (12.4.1).

04.1.2. Other actual rentals (S)

04.1.2.1. Other actual rentals

- Rentals actually paid for secondary residences.

Includes: payment for the use of the furniture in the case of dwellings let furnished.

Excludes: rentals for accommodation in holiday villages and holiday centres (11.2.1); rentals for garages or parking spaces not providing parking in connection with the dwelling (07.2.4).

04.2. Imputed rentals for housing

For coverage, see note to (04.1) above.

04.2.1. Imputed rentals of owner-occupiers (S)

04.2.1.1. Imputed rentals of owner-occupiers

- Imputed rentals of owners occupying their main residence.

04.2.2. Other imputed rentals (S)

04.2.2.1. Imputed rentals of households housed free

- The coverage of this item differs from that of the original COICOP, which included rentals of households paying a reduced rental; this is not applicable in the case of the HBS. This item contains only imputed rentals for households housed free.

*04.2.2.2. (Imputed rentals for secondary residences
Not applicable to the HBS.)*

04.3. Maintenance and repair of the dwelling

Maintenance and repair of dwellings are distinguished by two features: firstly, they are activities that have to be undertaken regularly in order to maintain the dwelling in good working order; secondly, they do not change the dwelling's performance, capacity or expected service life.

There are two types of maintenance and repair of dwellings: those which are minor, such as interior decoration and repairs to fittings, and which are commonly carried out by both tenants and owners; and those which are major, such as replastering walls or repairing roofs, and which are carried out by owners only.

Only expenditure which tenants and owner-occupiers incur on materials and services for minor maintenance and repairs are part of individual household consumption expenditure. Expenditure which owner-occupiers incur on materials and services for major maintenance and repairs are not part of individual household consumption expenditure.

Purchases of materials made by tenants or owner-occupiers with the intention of undertaking the maintenance or repairs themselves should be shown under (04.3.1). If, however, tenants or owner-occupiers pay an enterprise to carry out the maintenance or repairs, the total value of the service, including the costs of the materials used, should be shown under (04.3.2).

04.3.1. Materials for the maintenance and repair of the dwelling (ND)

04.3.1.1. Materials for the maintenance and repair of the dwelling

- Products such as paints and varnishes, renderings, wallpaper, fabric wall coverings, windowpanes, plaster, cement, putty, wallpaper pastes, etc., purchased for minor maintenance and repair of the dwelling. Small plumbing items (pipes, taps, joints, etc.) and surfacing materials (floorboards, ceramic tiles, etc.) are included.

Excludes: fitted carpets and linoleum (05.1.2); hand tools, door fittings, power sockets, wiring flex and light bulbs (05.5.2); brooms, scrubbing and dusting brushes and cleaning products (05.6.1); products used for major maintenance and repairs (intermediate consumption) or for extensions and conversions of dwellings (capital formation).

04.3.2. Services for the maintenance and repair of the dwelling (S)

04.3.2.1. Services for the maintenance and repair of the dwelling

- Services of plumbers, electricians, carpenters, glaziers, painters, decorators, floor polishers, etc., engaged for the regular maintenance and repair of the dwelling. Covers the total value of the service, that is both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are included.

Excludes: separate purchases of materials made by households with the intention of undertaking the maintenance or repair themselves (04.3.1), services engaged for major maintenance and repairs (intermediate consumption) or for extensions and conversions of dwellings (capital formation).

04.4. Water supply and miscellaneous services relating to the dwelling

04.4.1. Water supply (S)

04.4.1.1. Water supply

Includes: associated expenditure such as hire of meters, reading of meters, standing charges, etc.
Excludes: drinking water sold in bottles or containers (01.2.2); hot water or steam supplied by district heating plants (04.5.5).

04.4.2. Refuse collection (S)

04.4.2.1. Refuse collection

- Refuse collection and disposal.

04.4.3. Sewerage collection (S)

04.4.3.1. Sewerage collection

- Sewerage collection and disposal. If the distinction between 04.4.2.1 and 04.4.3.1 is difficult to make in terms of HBS data collection, the total amount should be grouped under 04.4.2.1.

04.4.4. Other services relating to the dwelling n.e.c. (S)

04.4.4.1. Other services relating to the dwelling n.e.c.

- Caretaking, gardening, stairwell cleaning, heating and lighting, maintenance of lifts and refuse disposal chutes in multi-occupied buildings;
- security services;
- snow removal and chimney sweeping.

Excludes: household services such as window cleaning, disinfecting, fumigation and pest extermination (05.6.2) and bodyguards (12.7.1).

04.5. Electricity, gas and other fuels

04.5.1. Electricity (ND)

04.5.1.1. Electricity

Includes: associated expenditure such as hire of meters, reading of meters, standing charges, etc.

04.5.2. Gas (ND)

04.5.2.1. Town gas and natural gas

04.5.2.2. Liquefied hydrocarbons (butane, propane, etc.)

Includes: associated expenditure such as hire of meters, reading of meters, storage containers, standing charges, etc.

04.5.3. Liquid fuels (ND)

04.5.3.1. Liquid fuels

- Domestic heating and lighting oil.

04.5.4. Solid fuels (ND)

04.5.4.1. Solid fuels

- Coal, coke, briquettes, firewood, charcoal, peat and the like.

04.5.5. Heat energy (ND)

04.5.5.1. Hot water, steam and ice

- Hot water and steam purchased from district heating plants;
- ice used for cooling and refrigeration purposes.

Includes: associated expenditure such as hire of meters, reading of meters, standing charges, etc.

05. FURNISHINGS, HOUSEHOLD EQUIPMENT AND ROUTINE MAINTENANCE OF THE HOUSE

05.1. Furniture and furnishings, carpets and other floor coverings

05.1.1. Furniture and furnishings (D)

05.1.1.1. Furniture and furnishings

- Beds, sofas, couches, tables, chairs, cupboards, chests of drawers and bookshelves;
- lighting equipment such as ceiling lights, standard lamps, globe lights and bedside lamps;
- pictures, sculptures, engravings, tapestries and other art objects, including reproductions of works of art and other ornaments;
- screens, folding partitions and other furniture and fixtures.

Includes: delivery and installation, where applicable; base mattresses, tatamis; bathroom cabinets; baby furniture such as cradles, highchairs and playpens; blinds with the exception of fabric blinds (05.2.1); camping and garden furniture with the exception of sunshades (05.2.1); mirrors, candle-holders and candlesticks.

Excludes: safes (05.3.1); ornamental glass and ceramic articles (5.4.1), clocks (12.3.1); wall thermometers and barometers, carrycots and pushchairs (12.3.2); works of art and antique furniture acquired primarily as an investment (capital formation).

05.1.2. Carpets and other floor coverings (D)

05.1.2.1. Carpets and other floor coverings

- Loose carpets, fitted carpets, linoleum and other such floor coverings.

Includes: laying of floor coverings.

Excludes: bathroom mats, rush mats and doormats (05.2.1); antique floor coverings acquired primarily as an investment (capital formation).

05.1.3. Repair of furniture, furnishings and floor coverings (S)

05.1.3.1. Repair of furniture, furnishings and floor coverings

Includes: total value of the service (that is, both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are covered); restoration of works of art, antique furniture and antique floor coverings other than those acquired primarily as an investment (capital formation).

Excludes: installation (05.1.1) or (05.1.2) separate purchases of materials made by households with the intention of undertaking the repair themselves (05.1.1) or (05.1.2); dry-cleaning of carpets (05.6.2.).

05.2. Household textiles

05.2.1. Household textiles (SD)

05.2.1.1. Household textiles

- Furnishing fabrics, curtains, double curtains, awnings, door curtains and fabric blinds;
- bedding such as mattresses, futons, pillows, bolsters and hammocks;
- bed linen such as sheets, pillowcases, blankets, travelling rugs, plaids, eiderdowns, counterpanes and mosquito nets;

- table and bathroom linen such as tablecloths and napkins, towels and face cloths;
- other household textiles such as shopping bags, laundry bags, shoe bags, covers for clothes and furniture, flags, sunshades, etc.;
- repair of household textiles.

Includes: cloth bought by the piece; oilcloth; bathroom mats, rush mats and doormats.
Excludes: fabric wall coverings (04.3.1); tapestries (05.1.1); floor coverings such as carpets and fitted carpets (05.1.2); electric blankets (05.3.2); hire of household linen (05.6.2); covers for motorcars, motorcycles, etc. (07.2.1); air mattresses and sleeping bags (09.3.2).

05.3. Household appliances

05.3.1. Major household appliances whether or not electrical (D)

05.3.1.1. Refrigerators, freezers and fridge-freezers

05.3.1.2. Clothes washing machines, clothes drying machines and dish washing machines

- Including ironing and pressing machines.

05.3.1.3. Cookers

- Including spit roasters, hobs, ranges, ovens and microwave ovens.

05.3.1.4. Heaters, air conditioners

- Air conditioners, humidifiers, space heaters, water heaters, ventilators and extractor hoods.

05.3.1.5. Cleaning equipment

- Vacuum cleaners, steam-cleaning machines, carpet shampooing machines and machines for scrubbing, waxing and polishing floors.

05.3.1.6. Sewing and knitting machines

05.3.1.7. Other major household appliances

- Such as safes, water softeners and drying cabinets.

Includes: delivery and installation of the appliances, where applicable.

Excludes: appliances that are built into the structure of the building (capital formation).

05.3.2. Small electrical household appliances (SD)

05.3.2.1. Small electrical household appliances

- Coffee mills, coffee-makers, juice extractors, can-openers, food mixers, deep fryers, meat grills, knives, toasters, ice cream and sorbet makers, yoghurt makers, hotplates, irons, kettles, fans, household scales, electric blankets, etc.

Excludes: small non-electrical household appliances and utensils, household scales (05.4.1); personal weighing machines and baby scales (12.1.3).

05.3.3. Repair of household appliances (S)

05.3.3.1. Repair of household appliances

Includes: total value of the service (that is, both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are covered); charges for the leasing or rental of major household appliances.

Excludes: separate purchase of materials made by households with the intention of undertaking the repair themselves (05.3.1) or (05.3.2); installation of major household appliances (05.3.1).

05.4. Glassware, tableware and household utensils

05.4.1. Glassware, tableware and household utensils (SD)

05.4.1.1. Glass- and crystalware, tableware

- For household, office and decoration;
- household or toilet articles of porcelain, ceramic, stoneware, china, terracotta.

05.4.1.2. Cutlery, flatware and silverware

05.4.1.3. Kitchen and domestic utensils

- Non-electric kitchen utensils of all materials such as saucepans, stewpots, pressure cookers, frying pans, grills, coffee mills, purée-makers, mincers, hotplates, household scales and other such mechanical devices;
- other household articles of all materials such as containers for bread, coffee, spices, etc., waste bins, wastepaper baskets, laundry baskets, portable money-boxes and strongboxes, towel rails, bottle racks, irons and ironing boards, letter boxes, feeding bottles, thermos flasks and iceboxes.

05.4.1.4. Repair of glassware, tableware and household utensils

Excludes: lighting equipment (05.1.1); electrical household appliances (05.3.1) or (05.3.2); cardboard tableware (05.6.1); personal weighing-machines and baby scales (12.1.3).

05.5. Tools and equipment for house and garden

05.5.1. Major tools and equipment (D)

05.5.1.1. Major tools and equipment

- Motorised tools and equipment such as electric drills, saws, sanders and hedge-cutters, garden tractors, motor-driven lawn mowers, cultivators, chain saws and water pumps;
- repair of these articles.

Includes: charges for the leasing or rental of do-it-yourself machinery and equipment.

05.5.2. Small tools and miscellaneous accessories (SD)

05.5.2.1. Small tools and miscellaneous accessories

- Hand tools such as saws, hammers, wrenches, screwdrivers, spanners, pliers, trimming knives, raps and files;
- garden tools such as hand lawn mowers, wheelbarrows, watering cans, hoses, spades, shovels, rakes, forks, scythes, sickles and secateurs;
- ladders and steps;

- door fittings (hinges, handles and locks), fittings for radiators and fireplaces and other metal articles for the house (curtain rails, carpet rods, hooks, etc.) or for the garden (chains, grids, stakes and hoop segments for fencing and bordering);
- small electrical accessories such as power sockets, switches, wiring flex, electric bulbs, fluorescent lighting tubes, torches, flashlights, hand-lamps, electric batteries for general use, bells and alarms;
- repair of these articles.

05.6. Goods and services for routine household maintenance

05.6.1. Non-durable household goods (ND)

05.6.1.1. Cleaning and maintenance products

- Such as soaps, washing powders, washing liquids, scouring powders, detergents, disinfectant bleaches, softeners, conditioners, window-cleaning products, waxes, polishes, dyes, unblocking agents, disinfectants, insecticides, fungicides and distilled water.

05.6.1.2. Other non-durable household articles

- Paper products such as filters, tablecloths and napkins, kitchen paper, vacuum cleaner bags and cardboard tableware, including aluminium foil and plastic bin liners;
- articles for cleaning such as brooms, scrubbing brushes, dustpans and dust brushes, dusters, tea towels, floorcloths, sponges, scourers, steel wool and chamois leathers;
- other non-durable household articles such as matches, candles, lamp wicks, methylated spirits, clothes pegs, hangers, sewing and knitting needles, thimbles, safety pins, nails, screws, nuts and bolts, drawing pins, tacks, washers, glues and adhesive tapes for household use, string, twine and rubber gloves.

Includes: polishes, creams and other shoe-cleaning articles.

Excludes: products for the upkeep of ornamental gardens (09.3.3); paper handkerchiefs, toilet paper, toilet soaps and other personal hygiene products (12.1.3).

05.6.2. Domestic services and household services (S)

05.6.2.1. Domestic services

- The employment of paid staff in private service such as butlers, cooks, maids, cleaners, drivers, gardeners, governesses, secretaries, tutors and au pairs;
- domestic services, including baby-sitting and housework, supplied by agencies or self-employed persons.

05.6.2.2. Household services

- Dry-cleaning, laundering and dyeing of household linen and household textiles and carpets;
- hire of furniture, furnishings, carpets, household equipment and household linen;
- other home care services such as window cleaning, disinfecting, fumigation and pest extermination.

Excludes: dry-cleaning, laundering and dyeing of garments (03.1.4); payments by tenants of furnished accommodation for the use of furniture (04.1.1) or (04.1.2); refuse collection (04.4.2); sewerage services (04.4.3); caretaking, gardening, stairwell cleaning and lighting, maintenance of lifts and refuse disposal chutes in multi-occupied buildings (04.4.4); security services (04.4.4); snow removal and chimney sweeping (04.4.4); repair and installation of furniture and floor coverings (05.1); repair and installation of household appliances (05.3); removal and storage services (07.3.6); services of wet nurses, crèches, nurseries, daycare centres and other child-minding facilities (12.4.1); bodyguards (12.7.1).

06. HEALTH

Includes health services provided by school and university health centres.

06.1. Medical products, appliances and equipment

This group covers medicaments, prostheses, medical appliances and equipment and other health-related products purchased by individuals, either with or without a prescription, usually from dispensing chemists, pharmacists or medical equipment suppliers.

They are intended for consumption or use outside a health facility or institution. Such products, supplied to outpatients by medical, dental and paramedical practitioners or to in-patients by hospitals and the like, are classified in (06.2) or (06.3) as appropriate.

06.1.1. Pharmaceutical products (ND)

06.1.1.1. *Pharmaceutical products*

- Medicinal preparations, medicinal drugs, patent medicines, serums and vaccines, vitamins and minerals, cod liver oil and halibut liver oil, oral contraceptives.

Excludes: veterinary products (09.3.4); personal hygiene articles such as medicinal soaps (12.3.1).

06.1.2. Other medical products (ND)

06.1.2.1. *Other medical products*

- Clinical thermometers, adhesive and non-adhesive bandages, hypodermic syringes, first-aid kits, hot-water bottles and ice bags, medical hosiery items such as elastic stockings and knee-supports, pregnancy tests, condoms and other mechanical contraceptive devices.

06.1.3. Therapeutic appliances and equipment (D)

06.1.3.1. *Therapeutic appliances and equipment*

- Corrective eyeglasses and contact lenses, hearing aids, glass eyes, artificial limbs and other prosthetic devices, orthopaedic braces and supports, orthopaedic footwear, surgical belts, trusses and supports, neck braces, medical massage equipment and health lamps, powered and unpowered wheelchairs and invalid carriages, "special" beds, crutches, electronic and other devices for monitoring blood pressure;
- repair of therapeutic appliances and equipment.

Includes: dentures but not fitting costs.

Excludes: hire of therapeutic equipment (06.2.3); protective goggles, belts and supports for sport (09.3.2); sunglasses not fitted with corrective lenses (12.3.2)

06.2. Out-patient services

This group covers medical, dental and paramedical services delivered to outpatients by medical, dental and paramedical practitioners and auxiliaries. The services may be delivered at home or in individual or group consulting facilities or dispensaries or the outpatient clinics of hospitals and the like. The group includes the medicaments, prostheses, medical appliances and equipment and other health-related products supplied to outpatients by such practitioners and auxiliaries.

A distinction is made between the services provided by medical analysis laboratories and X-ray centres and the services provided by medical and dental practitioners. Usually, it is the former who carry out the tests and take the X-rays and the latter who interpret them. Fees for the taking of tests and X-rays by medical analysis laboratories and X-ray centres are included under (06.2.3); fees for

interpretation are included under (06.2.2) and (06.2.1) as appropriate. However, fees for medical analyses, such as cardiological and echographical examinations, and X-rays, such as dental X-rays, which are undertaken by medical and dental practitioners themselves are also included under (06.2.1) or (06.2.2).

Medical, dental and paramedical services provided to in-patients by hospitals and the like are covered by (06.3).

06.2.1. Medical Services (S)

06.2.1.1. Medical Services

- Consultation of physicians in general or specialist practice.

Includes: services of orthodontic specialists.

Excludes: services of medical analysis laboratories and X-ray centres (06.2.3); traditional medicine (06.2.3).

06.2.2. Dental services (S)

06.2.2.1. Dental services

- Services of dentists, oral hygienists and other dental auxiliaries.

Includes: fitting costs of dentures.

Excludes: dentures (06.1.3); services of orthodontic specialists (06.2.1); services of medical analysis laboratories and X-ray centres (06.2.3).

06.2.3. Paramedical services (S)

06.2.3.1. Services of medical analysis laboratories and X-ray centres

06.2.3.2. Services of medical auxiliaries

- Services of freelance nurses and midwives;
- services of freelance acupuncturists, pedicurists, chiropractors, optometrists, physiotherapists, speech therapists, etc.;
- medically-prescribed corrective-gymnastic therapy;
- outpatient thermal bath or seawater treatments.

06.2.3.3. Other non-hospital services

- Ambulance services other than hospital ambulance services;
- hire of therapeutic equipment.

Includes: traditional medicine.

06.3. Hospital services

Hospitalisation is considered to apply when the patient is accommodated for the duration of the treatment. Hospital daycare and home-based hospital treatment are included as hospices for terminally-ill persons.

This group covers general and specialist hospitals as well as medical and maternity centres and nursing and convalescent homes, which chiefly provide in-patient services. It also covers the services of institutions serving old people in which medical monitoring is an essential component and rehabilitation centres providing in-patient health care and rehabilitative therapy where the objective is to cure the patient rather than to provide long-term support.

Hospitals are defined as institutions, which offer in-patient care under the direct supervision of qualified medical doctors. Medical centres, maternity centres, nursing homes and convalescent home also provide in-patient care, but their services are supervised and frequently delivered by staff of lower qualification than medical doctors.

The group does not cover facilities, such as medical practices, clinics and dispensaries, devoted exclusively to out-patient care (06.2), retirement homes for the elderly, institutions for disabled persons and rehabilitation centres primarily providing long-term support (12.4).

06.3.1. Hospital services (S)

06.3.1.1. Hospital services

- These comprise the provision of the following services to hospital in-patients:
 - basic services: administration; accommodation; food and drink; supervision and care by non-specialist staff (nursing auxiliaries); first-aid and resuscitation; ambulance transport; provision of medicines and other pharmaceutical products; provision of therapeutic appliances and equipment.
 - medical services: services of physicians in general or specialist practice, of surgeons and of dentists; medical analysis and X-ray; paramedical services such as those of nurses, midwives, pedicurists, chiropractors, optometrists, physiotherapists, speech therapists, etc.

07. TRANSPORT

07.1. Purchase of vehicles

Purchases of recreational vehicles such as camper vans, caravans, trailers, aeroplanes and boats are covered by (09.2.1).

07.1.1. Motorcars (D)

07.1.1.1. Purchase of new motorcars

- Motorcars, passenger vans, station wagons, estate cars and the like with either two-wheel or four-wheel drive.

07.1.1.2. Purchase of second-hand motorcars

- Motorcars, passenger vans, station wagons, estate cars and the like with either two-wheel or four-wheel drive.

Excludes: invalid carriages (06.1.3); camper vans (09.2.1); golf carts (09.2.1).

07.1.2. Motorcycles (D)

07.1.2.1. Motorcycles

- of all types, scooters and powered bicycles.

Includes: sidecars; snowmobiles.

Excludes: invalid carriages (06.1.3); golf carts (09.2.1).

07.1.3. Bicycles (D)

07.1.3.1. Bicycles

- and tricycles of all types, rickshaws, except toy bicycles and tricycles (09.3.1).

07.1.4. Animal-drawn vehicles (D)

07.1.4.1. Animal-drawn vehicles

- Animals required to draw the vehicles and related equipment (yokes, collars, harnesses, bridles, reins, etc.)

Excludes: horses and ponies, horse- and pony-drawn vehicles and related equipment purchased for recreational purposes (09.2.1).

07.2. Operation of personal transport equipment

Purchases of spare parts, accessories or lubricants made by households with the intention of undertaking the maintenance, repair or intervention themselves should be shown under (07.2.1) or (07.2.2). If, however, households pay an enterprise to carry out the maintenance, repair or fitting, the total value of the service, including the costs of the materials used, should be shown under (07.2.3).

07.2.1. Spare parts and accessories (SD)

07.2.1.1. Spare parts and accessories

- Tyres (new, used or retreaded), inner tubes, spark plugs, batteries, shock absorbers, filters, pumps and other spare parts or accessories for personal transport equipment.

Includes: products specifically for the cleaning and maintenance of transport equipment such as paints, chrome cleaners, sealing compounds and bodywork polishes; covers for motorcars, motorcycles, etc.

Excludes: crash helmets for motorcycles and bicycles (03.1.3); non-specific products for cleaning and maintenance such as distilled water, sponges, chamois leathers, detergents, etc. (05.6.1); charges for the fitting of spare parts and accessories and for the painting, washing and polishing of bodywork (07.2.3); radiotelephones (08.2); car radios (09.1.1); car baby-seats (12.3.2).

07.2.2. Fuels and lubricants (ND)

07.2.2.1. Fuels and lubricants

- Petrol and other fuels such as diesel, liquefied petroleum gas, alcohol and two-stroke mixtures;
- lubricants, brake and transmission fluids, coolants and additives.

Includes: fuel for major tools and equipment covered under (05.5.1) and recreational vehicles covered under (09.2.1).

Excludes: charges for oil changes and greasing (07.2.3).

07.2.3. Maintenance and repair of personal transport equipment (S)

07.2.3.1. Maintenance and repair

- Services purchased for the maintenance and repair of transport equipment such as fitting of parts and accessories, wheel balancing, technical inspection, breakdown services, oil changes, greasing and washing. Covers the total value of the service, that is both the cost of labour and the cost of materials used are included.

Excludes: separate purchase of spare parts, accessories or lubricants made by households with the intention of undertaking the maintenance or repair themselves (07.2.1) or (07.2.2); roadworthiness testing (07.2.4).

07.2.4. Other services in respect of personal transport equipment (S)

07.2.4.1. Other services in respect of personal transport equipment

- Hire of garages or parking spaces not providing parking in connection with the dwelling;
- toll facilities (bridges, tunnels, shuttle-ferries, motorways) and parking meters;
- driving lessons (cars or motorcycles), driving tests and driving licences;
- roadworthiness testing;
- hire of personal transport equipment without drivers.

Excludes: hire of a car with driver (07.3.2); services charges for insurance in respect of personal transport equipment (12.5.4).

07.3. Transport services

Purchases of transport services are classified by mode of transport. If a ticket covers two or more modes of transport - for example, intra-urban bus and underground or inter-urban train and ferry - and the expenditure cannot be apportioned between them, such purchases should be classified under (07.3.5).

Costs of meals, snacks, drinks, refreshments or accommodation services must be included if covered by the fare and not separately priced. If separately priced, these costs must be classified in division 11.

School transport services are included, but ambulance services are excluded (06.2.3)

07.3.1. Passenger transport by railway (S)

07.3.1.1. Passenger transport by railway

- Local and long-distance transport of individuals and groups of persons and luggage by train, tram and underground.

Includes: transport of private vehicles.

Excludes: funicular transport (07.3.6).

07.3.2. Passenger transport by road (S)

07.3.2.1. Passenger transport by road

- Local and long-distance transport of individuals and groups of persons and luggage by bus, coach, taxi and hired car with driver.

Excludes: ambulances (06.2.3) or (06.3.1).

07.3.3. Passenger transport by air (S)

07.3.3.1. Passenger transport by air

- Transport of individuals and groups of persons and luggage by aeroplane and helicopter.

Excludes: ambulances (06.2.3) or (06.3.1).

07.3.4. Passenger transport by sea and inland waterway (S)

07.3.4.1. Passenger transport by sea and inland waterway

- Transport of individuals and groups of persons and luggage by ship, boat, ferry, hovercraft and hydrofoil.

Includes: transport of private vehicles; accommodation services.

Excludes: ambulances (06.2.3) or (06.3.1).

07.3.5. Combined passenger transport (S)

07.3.5.1. Combined passenger transport

- Transport of individuals and groups of persons and luggage by two or more modes of transport when the expenditure cannot be apportioned between them.

Includes: transport of private vehicles

Excludes: ambulances (06.2.3) or (06.3.1); package holidays (09.6.1).

07.3.6. Other purchased transport services (S)

07.3.6.1. Other purchased transport services

- Funicular, chairlift and cable-car transport;
- removal and storage services;
- services of porters and left-luggage and luggage-forwarding offices;
- travel agents' commissions if separately priced.

Excludes: ambulances (06.2.3) or (06.3.1); funiculars, cable cars and ski lifts at ski resorts and holiday centres (09.4.1).

08. COMMUNICATION

08.1. Postal services

08.1.1. Postal services (S)

08.1.1.1. Postal services

- Payments for the delivery of letters, postcards and parcels.

Includes: all purchases of new postage stamps, pre-franked postcards and aerogrammes; private mail and parcel delivery.

Excludes: purchase of used or cancelled postage stamps (09.3.1); financial services of post offices (12.6.2).

08.2. Telephone and telefax equipment

08.2.1. Telephone and telefax equipment (D)

08.2.1.1. Telephone and telefax equipment

- Purchases of telephones, radiotelephones, telefax machines, telephone answering machines and telephone loudspeakers;
- repair of such equipment.

Excludes: telefax and telephone answering facilities provided by personal computers (09.1.3).

08.3. Telephone and telefax services

08.3.1. Telephone and telefax services (S)

08.3.1.1. Telephone and telefax services

- Installation and subscription costs of personal telephone equipment;
- telephone calls from a private or public line;
- telegraphy, telex and telefax services;
- information transmission services.

Includes: radiotelephony, radiotelegraphy and radiotelex; telephone calls in hotels, cafés or restaurants; hire of telephones, telefax machines, telephone answering machines and telephone loudspeakers; internet connection services.

Excludes: purchases of telephones, telefax machines, telephone answering machines and telephone loudspeakers (08.2.1).

09. RECREATION AND CULTURE

09.1. Audiovisual, photographic and information processing equipment

09.1.1. Equipment for the reception, recording and reproduction of sound and pictures (D)

09.1.1.1. Equipment for the reception, recording and reproduction of sound

- Radio sets, car radios, radio clocks, two-way radios and amateur radio receivers and transmitters;
- gramophones, tape players and recorders, cassette players and recorders, CD-players, personal stereos, stereo systems and their constituent units (turntables, tuners, amplifiers, speakers, etc.), microphones and earphones.

09.1.1.2. Television sets, video-cassette players and recorders

- Television aerials of all types.

Excludes: video cameras, camcorders and sound-recording cameras (09.1.2); repair of such equipment (09.1.5); hire of such equipment, licence fees and taxes on audiovisual equipment, subscriptions to private television networks (09.4.2).

09.1.2. Photographic and cinematographic equipment and optical instruments (D)

09.1.2.1. Photographic and cinematographic equipment

- Still cameras, movie cameras and sound-recording cameras, video cameras and camcorders, film and slide projectors, enlargers and film-processing equipment, and accessories such as screens, viewers, lenses, flash attachments, filters, and exposure meters.

09.1.2.2. Optical instruments

- Binoculars, microscopes, telescopes and compasses.

09.1.3. Information processing equipment (D)

09.1.3.1. Information processing equipment

- Personal computers and visual display units, printers, software and miscellaneous accessories accompanying them;
- calculators, including pocket calculators;
- typewriters and word processors.

Includes: telefax and telephone answering facilities provided by personal computers.
Excludes: video game software, video game cassettes and video game computers to be plugged into a television set (09.3.1); typewriter ribbons (09.5.4); slide rules (09.5.4).

09.1.4. Recording media (SD)

09.1.4.1. Recording media for pictures and sound

- Records and compact discs;
- pre-recorded tapes, cassettes, video cassettes, diskettes and CD-ROMs for tape recorders, cassette recorders, video recorders and personal computers;
- unrecorded tapes, cassettes, video cassettes, diskettes and CD-ROMs for tape recorders, cassette recorders, video recorders and personal computers;

- unexposed films, cartridges and discs for photographic and cinematographic use.

Includes: photographic supplies such as paper and flashbulbs; unexposed film the price of which includes the cost of processing without separately identifying it.

Excludes: batteries (05.5.2); computer software (09.3.1), video game software, cassettes or CD-ROMs (09.3.1); the development of films and the printing of photographs (09.4.2).

09.1.5. Repair of audiovisual, photographic and information processing equipment (S)

09.1.5.1. Repair of audiovisual, photographic and information processing equipment

- Repair of audiovisual equipment, photographic and cinematographic equipment, optical instruments and information processing equipment.

Includes: total value of the service (that is, both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are covered).

Excludes: separate purchases of materials made by households with the intention of undertaking the repair themselves (09.1.1) (09.1.2) or (09.1.3).

09.2. Other major durables for recreation and culture

09.2.1. Major durables for outdoor recreation (D)

09.2.1.1. Major durables for outdoor recreation

- Camper vans, caravans and trailers;
- aeroplanes, microlight aircraft and gliders, hang-gliders and hot-air balloons;
- boats, outboard motors, sails, rigging and superstructures;
- horses and ponies, horse- and pony-drawn vehicles and related equipment (harnesses, bridles, reins, saddles, etc.);
- major items for games and sport such as canoes, kayaks, windsurfing boards, body-building apparatus, sea-diving equipment and golf carts.

Includes: fitting-out of boats, camper vans, caravans, etc.

Excludes: horses and ponies, horse- and pony-drawn vehicles and related equipment purchased for personal transport (07.1.4); inflatable boats, rafts and swimming pools (09.3.2.).

09.2.2. Musical instruments and majors durables for indoor recreation (D)

09.2.2.1. Musical instruments

- Musical instruments of all sizes including electronic musical instruments, such as pianos, organs, violins, guitars, drums, trumpets, clarinets, flutes, recorders, harmonicas, etc.

09.2.2.2. Major durables for indoor recreation

- Billiard tables, ping-pong tables, pinball machines, gaming machines, etc.

Excludes: toys (09.3.1).

09.2.3. Maintenance and repair of other major durables for recreation and culture (S)

09.2.3.1. Maintenance and repair of other major durables for recreation and culture

- Repair of camper vans, aeroplanes, boats, canoes, musical instruments, etc.

Includes : total value of the service (that is, both the cost of labour and the cost of materials are covered); laying-up of boats, camper-vans, caravans, etc. for winter; hanger services for private planes; marina services for boats.

Excludes: fuel for recreational vehicles (07.2.2); separate purchases of materials made by households with the intention of undertaking the maintenance or repair themselves (09.2.1) or (09.2.2); veterinary services (09.3.5).

09.3. Other recreational items and equipment, gardens and pets

09.3.1. Games, toys and hobbies (SD)

09.3.1.1. Games, toys and hobbies

- Card games, parlour games, chess sets and the like;
- toys of all kinds, including dolls, soft toys, toy cars and trains, toy bicycles and tricycles, toy construction sets, puzzles, plasticine, electronic games, masks, disguises, jokes, novelties, fireworks and rockets, festoons and Christmas tree decorations;
- stamp-collecting requisites such as used or cancelled postage stamps and stamp albums and other items for collections (coins, medals, mineral, zoological and botanical specimens, etc.), and other tools and articles n.e.c. for hobbies.

Includes: video game software, video game computers that plug into a television set; video game cassettes and video game CD-ROMs.

Excludes: collectors' items falling into the category of works of art or antiques (05.1.1); unused postage stamps (08.1.1); Christmas trees (09.3.3); children's scrapbooks (09.5.1).

09.3.2. Equipment for sport, camping and open-air recreation (SD)

09.3.2.1. Equipment for sport, camping and open-air recreation

- Gymnastic, physical education and sports equipment such as balls, shuttlecocks, nets, rackets, bats, skis, golf clubs, foils, sabres, poles, weights, discuses, javelins, dumb-bells, chest expanders and other body-building equipment;
- parachutes and other sky-diving equipment;
- firearms and ammunition for hunting, sport and personal protection;
- fishing rods and other fishing equipment;
- equipment for beach and open-air games such as bowls, croquet, frisbee, volleyball and inflatable boats, rafts and swimming pools;
- camping equipment such as tents and accessories, sleeping bags, back-packs, air mattresses and inflating pumps, camping stoves and barbecues;
- repair of such articles.

Includes: game-specific footwear (ski boots, football boots, golfing shoes and other such footwear fitted with ice skates, rollers, spikes, studs, etc.); protective sports headgear; other protective sports gear such as life jackets, boxing gloves, body padding, shin-guards, goggles, belts, supports, etc.

Excludes: crash helmets for motorcycles and bicycles (03.1.3); camping and garden furniture (05.1.1).

09.3.3. Gardens, plants and flowers (ND)

09.3.3.1. Gardens, plants and flowers

- Natural or artificial flowers and foliage, plants, shrubs, bulbs, tubers, seeds, fertilisers, composts, garden peat, turf for lawns, specially treated soils for ornamental gardens, horticultural preparations, pots and pot holders.

Includes: natural and artificial Christmas trees; delivery charges for flowers and plants.
Excludes: gardening gloves (03.1.3); gardening services (04.4.4) or (05.6.2); gardening equipment (05.5.1); gardening tools (05.5.2).

09.3.4. Pets and related products (ND)

09.3.4.1. Pets and related products

- Pets, pet foods, veterinary and grooming products for pets, collars, leashes, kennels, birdcages, fish tanks, cat litters, etc.

Excludes: horses and ponies (07.4.1) or (09.2.1); veterinary services (09.3.5).

09.3.5. Veterinary and other services for pets (S)

09.3.5.1. Veterinary and other services for pets

- Veterinary and other services for pets such as grooming, boarding, tattooing and training.

09.4. Recreational and cultural services

09.4.1. Recreational and sporting services (S)

09.4.1.1. Recreational and sporting services

• Services provided by:

- sports stadia, horse-racing courses, motor-racing circuits, velodromes, etc.;
- skating rinks, golf courses, swimming pools, tennis courts, squash courts and bowling alleys, gymnasia, fitness centres;
- fairs and amusement parks;
- roundabouts, see-saws and other playground facilities for children;
- pinball machines and other games for adults other than games of chance;
- ski slopes, ski lifts and the like;
- hire of equipment and accessories for sport and recreation, such as aeroplanes, boats, horses, skiing or camping equipment;
- out-of-school individual or group lessons in bridge, chess, aerobics, dancing, music, skating, skiing, swimming or other pastimes;
- services of mountain guides, tour guides, etc;
- navigational aid services for boating.

Includes: hire of game-specific footwear such as bowling shoes, football boots, golfing shoes, running spikes, ski boots and footwear fitted with ice skates, studs or rollers, etc.
Excludes: cable-car and chairlift transport not at ski resorts or holiday centres (07.3.6).

09.4.2. Cultural services (S)

09.4.2.1. Cinemas, theatres, concerts

- Services provided by cinemas, theatres, opera houses, concert halls, music halls, circuses;
- sound-and-light shows;

09.4.2.2. Museums, zoological gardens and the like

- Services provided by museums, libraries, art galleries, exhibitions;
- services provided by historic monuments, national parks, zoological and botanical gardens, aquaria.

09.4.2.3. Television and radio taxes and hire of equipment

- Television and radio broadcasting, in particular licence fees for and subscriptions to television networks;
- hire of equipment and accessories for culture, such as television sets, video cassettes, etc.;

09.4.2.4. Other services

- Services of musicians, clowns, private entertainers;
- services of photographers such as developing, print processing, enlarging, portrait photography, wedding photography, etc.

09.4.3. Games of chance (S)

09.4.3.1. Games of chance

- For lotteries, bookmakers, totalisers, casinos and other gambling establishments, gaming machines, bingo halls, scratch cards, sweepstakes, etc. (service charge is defined as the difference between the amounts paid for lottery tickets or placed in bets and the amounts paid out to winners).

09.5. Newspapers, books and stationery

09.5.1. Books (SD)

09.5.1.1. Books

- Books, including atlases, dictionaries, encyclopaedias, textbooks, guidebooks and musical scores.

Includes: scrapbooks and albums for children, bookbinding.

Excludes: stamp albums (09.3.1).

09.5.2. Newspapers and periodicals (ND)

09.5.2.1. Newspapers and periodicals

- Newspapers, magazines and other periodicals.

09.5.3. Miscellaneous printed matter (ND)

09.5.3.1. Miscellaneous printed matter

- Catalogues and advertising material;

- posters, greetings cards and visiting cards, announcement and message cards, plain or picture postcards, calendars;
- road maps, world maps and globes.

Excludes: pre-franked postcards and aerogrammes (08.1.1); stamp albums (09.3.1).

09.5.4. Stationery and drawing materials (ND)

09.5.4.1. Stationery and drawing materials

- Writings pads, envelopes, account books, notebooks, diaries, etc.;
- pens, pencils, fountain pens, ball-point pens, felt-tip pens, inks, ink erasers, rubbers, pencil sharpeners, etc.;
- stencils, carbon paper, typewriter ribbons, inking pads, correcting fluids, etc.;
- paper punches, paper cutters, paper scissors, office glues and adhesives, staplers and staples, paperclips, drawing pins, etc.;
- drawing and painting materials such as canvas, paper, card, paints, crayons, pastels and brushes.

Includes: educational materials such as exercise books, slide rules, geometry instruments, slates, chalks and pencil boxes.

Excludes: pocket calculators (09.1.3).

09.6. Package holidays

09.6.1. Package holidays (S)

09.6.1.1. Package holidays

- All-inclusive holidays or tours which provide for travel, food, accommodation, guides, etc.

Includes: half-day and one-day excursions, pilgrimages.

10. EDUCATION

Covers educational services only. Does not include expenditure on educational materials, such as books (09.5.1) and stationery (09.5.4), or educational support services, such as healthcare services (06), transport services (07.3), catering (11.1.2) and accommodation (11.2.1).

It includes education by radio or television broadcasting.

The breakdown of educational services is based on the level categories of the 1997 International Standard Classification of Education (ISCED-97) of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

10.1. Pre-primary and primary education

10.1.1. Pre-primary and primary education (S)

10.1.1.1. Pre-primary and primary education

- Levels 0 and 1 of ISCED-97: pre-primary and primary school.

Includes: literacy programmes for students too old for primary school.

10.2. Secondary education

10.2.1. Secondary education (S)

10.2.1.1. Secondary education

- Levels 2 and 3 of ISCED-97: lower-secondary and upper-secondary education.

Includes: out-of-school secondary education for adults and young people.

10.3. Post-secondary non-tertiary education

10.3.1. Post-secondary non-tertiary education (S)

10.3.1.1. Post-secondary non-tertiary education

- Level 4 of ISCED-97: post-secondary non-tertiary education.

Includes: out-of-school post-secondary non-tertiary education for adults and young people.

10.4. Tertiary education

10.4.1. Tertiary education (S)

10.4.1.1. Tertiary education

- Levels 5 and 6 of ISCED-97: first and second stages of tertiary education.

10.5. Education not definable by level

10.5.1. Education not definable by level (S)

10.5.1.1. Education not definable by level

- Educational programmes, generally for adults, which do not require any special prior instruction, in particular vocational training and cultural development.

Excludes: driving lessons (07.2.4); recreational, sport or tourist activities not constituting organised, sustained and progressive training courses, for example music, sport or bridge lessons given by independent teachers (09.4.1).

11. RESTAURANTS AND HOTELS

11.1. Catering services

11.1.1. Restaurants, cafés and the like (S)

11.1.1.1. Restaurants

- Catering services (meals, snacks, drinks and refreshments) provided by restaurants.

11.1.1.2. Cafés, bars and the like

- Catering services (meals, drinks and refreshments) provided by cafés, buffets, bars, tearooms, etc., including those provided:
 - in places providing recreational, cultural and sporting services: theatres, cinemas, sports stadia, swimming pools, sports complexes, museums, art galleries, etc.;
 - on public transport (coaches, trains, boats, aeroplanes), except where the price of the meal is included in the fare (for example, airline meals);
 - in places serving drinks in conjunction with entertainment: cabaret theatres, nightclubs, dancing establishments with bars, etc.
- Also included are:
 - the sale of food products and beverages for immediate consumption by kiosks, street vendors and the like, including food products and beverages dispensed ready for consumption by automatic vending machines;
 - the sale of cooked dishes by restaurants for consumption off their premises;
 - the sale of cooked dishes by catering contractors whether collected by the customer or delivered to the customer's home.

Includes: tips.

Excludes: tobacco purchases (02.2.1), telephone calls (08.3.1).

11.1.2. Canteens (S)

11.1.2.1. Canteens

- Catering services of works canteens, office canteens and canteens in schools, universities and other educational establishments.

Includes: university refectories, military messes and wardrooms.

Excludes: food and drink provided to hospital in-patients (06.3.1).

11.2. Accommodation services

11.2.1. Accommodation services (S)

11.2.1.1. Accommodation services

- Accommodation services in hotels, boarding houses, motels, inns and “bed and breakfast” establishments;
- accommodation services of holiday villages and holiday centres, camping and caravan sites, youth hostels and mountain chalets;
- accommodation services of boarding schools, universities and other educational establishments;
- accommodation services of public transport (trains, boats, etc.) when priced separately;

- accommodation services of hostels for young worker or immigrants.

Includes: tips, porters.

Excludes: rentals of households occupying a room in a hotel or boarding house as their main residence (04.1.1); rentals paid by households for secondary residence for the duration of the holiday period (04.1.2); telephone calls (08.3.1); catering services in such establishments, except for breakfast or other meals included in the price of the accommodation (11.1.1); persons housed in orphanages, homes for the disabled or maladjusted persons (12.4.1).

12. MISCELLANEOUS GOODS AND SERVICES

12.1. Personal care

12.1.1. Hairdressing salons and personal grooming establishments (S)

12.1.1.1. *Hairdressing salons and personal grooming establishments*

- Services of hairdressing salons, barbers, beauty shops, manicurists, pedicurists, Turkish baths, saunas, solariums, non-medical massages, etc.

Includes: bodycare, depilation and the like.

Excludes: spas (06.2.3) or (06.3.1); fitness centres (09.4.1).

12.1.2. Electrical appliances for personal care (D)

12.1.2.1. *Electrical appliances for personal care*

- Electrical appliances: electric razors and hair trimmers, hand-held and hood hairdryers, curling tongs and styling combs, sun-lamps, vibrators, electric toothbrushes and other electrical appliances for dental hygiene, etc.;
- repair of such appliances.

12.1.3. Other appliances, articles and products for personal care (ND)

12.1.3.1. *Other appliance, articles and products for personal care*

- Non-electrical appliances: non-electric razors and hair trimmers and blades therefore, scissors, nailfiles, combs, shaving brushes, hairbrushes, toothbrushes, nail brushes, hairpins, curlers, personal weighing machines, baby scales, etc.;
- articles for personal hygiene: toilet soap, medicinal soap, cleansing oil and milk, shaving soap, shaving cream and foam, toothpaste, etc.;
- beauty products, perfumes and deodorants: lipstick, nail varnish, make-up and make-up removal products (including powder compacts, brushes and powder puffs), hair lacquers and lotions, pre-shave and after-shave products, sunbathing products, hair removers, perfumes and toilet waters, personal deodorants and bath products;
- other products: toilet paper, paper handkerchiefs, paper towels, sanitary towels, cotton wool, cotton tops, disposable babies' napkins.

Excludes: babies' napkins made of fabric (03.1.2); handkerchiefs made of fabric (03.1.3).

12.2. Prostitution

12.2.1. Prostitution (S)

12.2.1.1. *Prostitution*

- Services provided by prostitutes and the like.

12.3. Personal effects n.e.c.

12.3.1. Jewellery, clocks and watches (D)

12.3.1.1. Jewellery, clocks and watches

- Precious stones and metals, jewellery fashioned out of such stones and metals, including costume jewellery, cuff links and tiepins;
- clocks, watches, stopwatches, alarm clocks;
- repair of such articles.

Includes: travelling alarm clocks.

Excludes: ornaments (05.1.1) or (05.4.1); radio clocks (09.1.1); precious stones and metals and jewellery fashioned out of such stones and metals acquired primarily as an investment (capital formation).

12.3.2. Other personal effects (SD)

12.3.2.1. Travel goods and other carriers

- Suitcases, trunks, travel bags, attaché cases, satchels, handbags, wallets, purses, etc.
- repair of such articles.

12.3.2.2. Other personal effects

- Articles for smokers: pipes, lighters, cigarette cases, cigar cutters, etc.;
- articles for babies: baby carriages, pushchairs, carrycots, recliners, car beds and seats, back-carriers, front-carriers, reins and harnesses, etc.;
- miscellaneous personal articles; sunglasses, walking sticks and canes, umbrellas and parasols, fans, key-rings, etc.;
- funerary articles such as urns, coffins and gravestones;
- repair of such articles.

Includes: wall thermometers and barometers.

Excludes: baby furniture (05.1.1); shopping bags (05.2.1); feeding bottles (05.4.1); pencil boxes (09.5.4).

12.4. Social protection

Social protection as defined here covers assistance and support provided to persons who are: elderly, disabled, suffering from occupational injuries and diseases, survivors (spouses and dependents of deceased persons), unemployed and others (the destitute, the homeless, low-income earners, indigenous persons, immigrants, refugees, alcohol and substance abusers, etc.). It also covers assistance and support services provided to families and children.

12.4.1. Social protection services (S)

12.4.1.1. Social protection services

Households usually purchase social protection services, either wholly or in part, for the elderly, the disabled and the family. Such services include residential care, home help, daycare and rehabilitation. More specifically, this class covers payments by households for:

- retirement homes for the elderly, residences for the disabled, rehabilitation centres providing long-term support for patients rather than health care and rehabilitative therapy, schools for the disabled where the main aim is to help students overcome their disability;
- home cleaning services, meal programmes, daycare centres, daycare services and holiday-care services for the elderly and disabled;
- counselling, guidance, arbitration, fostering and adoption services for families.

12.4.1.2. Crèches, nurseries

Service of wet-nurses, crèches, nurseries, playschools, kindergartens, daycare centres and other child-minding facilities.

12.5. Insurance

Insurance service charges are classified by type of insurance, namely: life insurance and non-life insurance (that is, insurance in connection with the dwelling, health, transport, etc.). Service charges for multi-risk insurance covering several risks are not classified separately. For such insurance, the service charges which cannot be allocated to the various risks covered should be classified on the basis of the cost of the principal risk.

12.5.1. (Life insurance

Not applicable to the HBS.)

12.5.2. Insurance connected with the dwelling (S)

12.5.2.1. Insurance connected with the dwelling

- Charges paid by owner-occupiers and by tenants for the kinds of insurance typically taken out by tenants against fire, theft, water damage, etc.

Excludes: service charges paid by owner-occupiers for the kinds of insurance typically taken out by landlords (intermediate consumption).

12.5.3. Insurance connected with health (S)

12.5.3.1. Insurance connected with health

- Charges for sickness and accident insurance.

12.5.4. Insurance connected with transport (S)

12.5.4.1. Insurance connected with transport

- Charges for insurance in respect of personal transport equipment;
- charges for travel insurance and luggage insurance.

12.5.5. Other insurance (S)

12.5.5.1. Other insurance

- Charges for other insurance such as civil liability for injury or damage to third parties or their property.

Excludes: civil liability damage to third parties or their property arising from the operation of personal transport equipment (12.5.4.).

12.6. Financial services n.e.c.

*12.6.1. (FISIM: Financial intermediation services indirectly measured
Not applicable to the HBS.)*

12.6.2. Financial services n.e.c. (S)

12.6.2.1. Financial services n.e.c.

- Actual charges for the financial services of banks, post offices, saving banks, moneychangers and similar financial institutions;
- fees and service charges of brokers, investment counsellors, tax consultants and the like;
- administrative charges of private pension funds and the like.

12.7. Other services n.e.c.

12.7.1. Other services n.e.c. (S)

12.7.1.1. Other services n.e.c.

- Fees for legal services, employment agencies, etc.;
- charges for undertaking and other funeral services;
- payment for the services of estate agents, housing agents, auctioneers, salesroom operators and other intermediaries;
- payment for photocopies and other document reproduction;
- fees for the issue of birth, marriage or death certificates;
- payment for newspaper notices and advertisements;
- payment for the services of graphologists, astrologers, private detectives, bodyguards, matrimonial agencies and marriage guidance counsellors, public writers, miscellaneous concessions (seats, toilets, cloakrooms), etc.

Functions 13 (Individual consumption expenditure by Non-Profit Institutions Serving Households (NPISH)) and 14 (Individual consumption expenditure by general government) are not applicable in the case of the HBS.

ANNEX 4

SURVEY PROFILES

**EFTA COUNTRIES:
ICELAND, NORWAY**

(The information in this annex has been provided by the national delegates of the Working Group on Household Budget Surveys from the countries concerned)

The EU Comparative Tabulations on Household Budget surveys for 1999 will contain comparable data for some of the EFTA countries as well. Hence, this annex contains the relevant methodological information for the surveys used for the Comparative Tabulations.

The national experts from the EFTA countries form part of the Working Group on Household Budget Surveys in Eurostat on the same terms as the delegates from the EU Member States.

Iceland (IS)

CHAPTER 10 GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT THE SURVEY:

Aim of the survey: The main purpose of the survey is to establish a new base for the Consumer Price Index

Background: Statistics Iceland has conducted seven household budget surveys. The first survey was held in 1939/1940. Other surveys were in 1953/1954, 1964/1965, 1978/1979, 1985/1986, 1990 and 1995. The first four surveys included only households of married couples living in the Reykjavík area where the head of the family was an employee. In the 1985/1986 survey and later all households were included in the sampling frame. A continuous survey started in January 2000.

Legal base: The legal base is found in The Consumer Price Index Act No. 12, 2 March 1995. In Article 1:

Statistics Iceland shall compile and publish an index showing changes in private consumption prices. The index is termed the Consumer Price Index and shall be constructed according to a base determined by Statistics Iceland in accordance with results of a household budget survey.

In Article 2:

At an interval of no more than five years Statistics Iceland shall make a special survey of household expenses, a household budget survey. The survey shall comprise households irrespective of their location, family type, occupation and industry of household members and it shall cover any type of household expenses. On completing the processing of the survey results, Statistics Iceland shall make changes in the base for the Consumer Price Index in accordance with these results and other data collected specifically for this purpose. Statistics Iceland shall publicly give an account of this survey and its results as well as the methods of applying these in the formation of a new index base.

Uses of the survey: The main uses of the HBS are:

- forming a new base for the CPI
- measuring the effects of economic policy
- mapping changes in consumer behaviour
- as a source for various sociological studies
- as a source for the National Accounts

Users of the survey: Statistics Iceland for the CPI base and National Accounts, Ministry of Finance for economic policy, research organisations, private enterprises and the general public.

Timing and Frequency:

Frequency: Irregular intervals until 1985. Every 5th year from 1985 to 1995. A continuous survey started in January 2000.

Reference year: Data is cumulated over three years, the reference year is the last year and data from the first two years are adjusted to the reference year using sub-indices from the CPI. Aim to use moving three-year averages in future for rebasing the CPI and in publications

Sample design:

Sample size (net): Annually around 1180 – 1200 households.

Sample design: Sample is drawn at random from the National Registry of Persons using single-stage cluster sampling. The clusters are defined as households and identified by family numbers in the National Registry of Persons.

Stratification: No stratification is used.

Sampling frame: Family numbers in the National Register of persons. The sample is drawn successively through the survey in order to get the most recent information on addresses. Family numbers represent persons 18 years and older. Couples living together with or without children share the same family number. The sampling frame is defined as family numbers where the age is from 18 to 74 years.

Unit of measurement: Household.

Response rate: Number of participating households was 657 in year 2000 and 612 in year 2001. Response rate was 57.6% in year 2000 and 51% in 2001. No substitution is used.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Covers all private households with at least one person between 18 and 74 years old. Institutionalised persons are not included.

Definition of household: Persons living under same roof and sharing meals and other costs of living.

Members of a household: Persons living in the household at the time of the survey and persons temporarily away from the household, e.g. students in boarding schools and fishermen/sailors.

Not included in a household are: guests, tenants and institutionalised persons.

Reference person: Contact person in the household is the wife/mother (if present). Head of household is the person with the highest income.

Child-adult definition: A child is defined as a person less than 25 year old living with its parents.

Survey content:

Consumption expenditure approach: A consumption approach is used and the household consumption on the domestic territory in the period is measured. This includes monetary expenditures on goods and services. The value of goods used is the value of commodities acquired by the household during the reference period, irrespective of when payment is made. Gifts are only counted as consumption of the giving household.

Imputed rent measurement is based on information on the housing stock from The Land Registry of Iceland and also on the survey results. Consumption of own production is measured for all participants. Income in kind is measured via tax registers.

Household diary: The households fill in diaries for a period of 2 weeks. The diaries cover all the household expenditures for the period. Consumption of own production is also recorded. Every person in the household aged 12 and older receives its own diary. In order to minimise the burden on keeping a household diary people are encouraged to enclose receipts from their shopping in a pocket inside the diary booklet. It requires though well itemised receipts.

Interview(s): Each household in the sample is first contacted by telephone in order to introduce the survey and ask for participation. Those who are not willing to participate are still enquired for information on characteristics of their household, in order to improve non-response analysis.. An interviewer visits participants after the two weeks diary period with a questionnaire on housing, durables, rare expenses etc. Interviewers use laptops when interviewing participants living in the

capital area and in two other urban areas, but in other parts of the country a paper questionnaire is sent out.

Nomenclature: COICOP version September 1996, four digit level.

Classification(s): Ísat 95 (NACE, rev. 1), Ísstarf 95 (ISCO88).

Reference periods: The reference period for the diaries is 2 weeks and all daily consumption expenditure is registered. The reference period for the retrospective interviews/questionnaires is 3 months. The expenditures recorded are among other things: housing, transportation, travel, medical care, education and recreation.

CHAPTER 11 PROCESSING OF DATA:

Weighting: Results are weighted to compensate for non-response and to correct for different sampling probabilities. The weights are sample-based with types of household as weighting classes.

Grossing up: Total population excluding institutionalised persons.

Processing data: Processing is done by Statistics Iceland in CAPI for interviews and other data processing using SPSS, Access and Excel.

Control procedures: Checks are performed in order to identify unreasonable answers. Missing values are imputed, either by a value recognised as correct from another source or by a simple statistic such as the mean or median.

Types of statistical measures: Both means and population totals are calculated as well as appropriate dispersion measures.

Production time: Approximately 1 year, the results from the 2000 HBS were incorporated into the CPI in March 2002. Publication of the first survey results is planned for the first part of 2004 and yearly after that.

Use of registers: National tax registry information on income and assets. The Land Registry of Iceland for information on housing stock.

Forms of dissemination: Results will be published in a publication named *Rannsókn á útgjöldum heimilanna 2002* (The 2002 Household budget survey) and in the monthly statistical bulletin *Hagtiðindi*.

Norge (N)

General information about the survey:

Aim of the survey: The main purposes of the survey are to up-date the weights used in calculating the consumer price index and to study the consumption patterns in various groups of households.

Background: Before the annual surveys were started in 1974 nation-wide surveys were carried out in 1958, 1967 and 1973.

Legal base: None.

Uses of survey: Internally in Statistics Norway the survey results are used for analyses of standards of living, for constructing the consumer price indices, for estimating households' final consumption in national accounts, for analyses of the use of energy, resources and environment influences and for econometric analyses. Externally, use is made of the data for economic analyses in different ministries, for studies of nutritional patterns in the population and for reports from private enterprises.

Users of the survey: Statistics Norway, different ministries, research organisations, universities, private enterprises and the general public.

Timing and Frequency:

Frequency: Continuous since 1974.

Reference year:

The survey is yearly, but to give detailed results it is necessary to cumulate over three years. The reference year is the last year and the data from the previous year are adjusted using the general price index.

Sample design:

Sample size (net): Annually approximately 1300-1390 households.

Sample design: Probability sampling. Part of the survey is a panel study where households are contacted two years in a row.

Stratification: The sample is selected in three stages. The country is divided into sample areas which are firstly grouped into 10 regions. Within each group, towns with more than 30.000 inhabitants are selected as strata of their own. The remaining sample areas are stratified by type of municipality (industrial structure and centrality) and number of inhabitants. The final sample is drawn at random and based on the index of names and addresses of the population.

Sample representativeness: The sample is representative at the regional level.

Sampling frame:

From 1996 the sample will be made up of households belonging to drawn persons aged 0-79. Institutional households such as hospitals, boarding houses etc. are not included.

Unit of measurement: The ultimate sample unit is the person on whom the household is based. The survey (enumeration) units are the household and its individual members.

Response rate: 61% (1992-1994), no substitution is used.

Main concepts and definitions:

Coverage: Private households on the national territory.

Definition of household: A household consists of all persons living in the same dwelling and eating at least one meal together per day.

Members of a household: Visitors living permanently somewhere else are not included. Persons who are temporarily absent but live in the household are included as members. Examples are persons at work, at school, doing military service, on holiday etc. Servants living in and lodgers receiving board are included in the household. Students are not included in the household if they live away and their study takes more than 6 months.

Child-adult definition: A child is under 16 years of age.

Consumption/expenditure approach:

From 1996 imputed rent has been calculated.

Household diary: The household fills in a household diary for a period of 14 days. Individual diaries are given to household members more than 15 years old. The diaries are open-ended and cover all household expenditures in the 14-day period. Quantities of food and beverages are also noted as well as gifts received from persons outside the household and consumption of own production. Consumption of own production is not recorded in the individual diary.

Interview(s): Two interviews are done, one before and one after the diary-keeping period. In the introductory interview the characteristics of the household members are surveyed. The final interview follows a questionnaire divided into seven sections: - absences and visitors during the diary keeping period - accommodation - durables and expenditure on infrequent items such as furniture and paintings - package tours, expenditure on child-care and gifts plus own production of food.

Variables:

Education is not surveyed, but from 1998 education can be taken from registers.

Nomenclature:

From 1996 the expenditure nomenclature used is the COICOP-HBS.

Classification(s): ISCO 88 is used as the occupational classification.

Reference periods: A 12 month retrospective period is used for expenditure on housing, fuel and electricity, cars and durable goods.

Processing of data:

Weighting: In order to correct sample bias, adjustments are made for non-response. Household groups with a high non-response rate are weighted relatively highly in estimating average figures.

Grossing up: Not done.

Processing data: The data are processed using CAPI.

Control procedures: Validity control, logical control and control of minimum-maximum values.

Types of statistical measures: Absolute and relative measures developed, sampling errors calculated.

Production time: 6 months.

Use of registers: Information on income is taken from tax-registers.

Coherence with other statistics: The figures are compared with national-accounts estimates of households' final consumption. The values correspond reasonable well.

Forms of dissemination:

Results from the survey are published every year in 'Today's statistics' and every third year as a separate publication from Statistics Norway.

For the 1996 and subsequent surveys on there will be some corrections.

ANNEX 5

REFERENCES

BIBLIOGRAFY

Eurostat; “Family Budget Surveys in the EU: Methodology and Recommendations for Harmonization”; Luxembourg, 1993.

Eurostat; “Household Budget Surveys in the EU: Methodology and Recommendations for Harmonization”; Luxembourg, 1997.

Eurostat; “European System of Accounts – ESA 1995”; Luxembourg, 1996.

Eurostat, IMF, OECD, UN, WB; “System of National Accounts 1993”; Brussels/Luxembourg, New York, Paris, Washington D.C., 1993.

United Nations; “Classifications of Expenditure According to Purpose”; New York, 2000.

WORLD WIDE WEB LINKS

<http://www.cc.cec/home/eurostat/esa/en/esa95en.htm> (ESA)
http://europa.eu.int/eur-lex/en/lif/dat/1995/en_395D0309.html (ESA)
http://europa.eu.int/eur-lex/en/lif/dat/1999/en_399R2166.html (HICP)
http://europa.eu.int/eur-lex/en/lif/dat/1996/en_396R1749.html (HICP)
http://europa.eu.int/eur-lex/en/lif/dat/1998/en_398R1687.html (HICP)
<http://www.ilo.org/public/english/bureau/stat/res/index.htm> (ILO)